Contents

To the student 5
To the teacher 7
Map of contents described in phonological terms 9

Section A Letters and sounds
1  Bye, buy  Introducing letters and sounds 10
2  Plane, plan  /eu/, /æ/
3  Back, pack  /b/, /p/
4  Rice, rise  /s/, /z/
5  Down town  /d/, /t/
6  Meet, met  /iː/, /e/  20
7  Carrot, cabbage  /ɔ/, /h/
8  Few, view  /fi/, /v/  24
9  Gate, Kate  /ɡ/, /k/  26
10  Hear, we're, year  /h/, /wl/, /j/  28
11  Wine, win  /aʊ/, /w/  30
12  Sheep, jeep, cheap  /ʃ/, /dʒ/, /tʃ/  32
13  Flies, fries  /l/, /r/  34
14  Car, care  /a:rr/, /eə(r)/  36
15  Some, sun, sung  /ʌ/, /n/, /ŋ/  38
16  Note, not  /əʊ/, /ə/  40
17  Arthur's mother  /θ/, /ð/  42
18  Sun, full, June  /s/, /ʃ/, /u:/  44
19  Shirt, short  /ʃt(r)/, /ʃt(r)/  46
20  Toy, town  /ɔɪ/, /əʊ/  48

Section B Syllables, words and sentences
21  Eye, my, mine  Introducing syllables 50
22  Saturday September 13th  Introducing word stress 52
23  Remember, he told her  Introducing sentence stress 54

Syllables
24  Oh, no snow!  Consonants at the start of syllables 56
25  Go – goal – gold  Consonants at the end of syllables 58
26  Paul's calls, Max's faxes  Syllables: plural and other –s endings 60
27  Pete played, Rita rested  Syllables: adding past tense endings 62

Word stress
28  Record, reCORDER  Stress in two-syllable words 64
29  Second hand, bookshop  Stress in compound words 66
30  Unforgettable  Stress in longer words 1 68
31  Public, publicity  Stress in longer words 2 70
## Sentence stress

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>DON’T LOOK NOW!  Sentences with all the words stressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>THAT could be the MAN  Unstressed words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>I’ll ASK her (Alaska)  Pronouns and contractions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>she was FIRST  Pronouncing the verb be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>WHAT do you THiNK?  Auxiliary verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>A PIECE of CHEESE  Pronouncing short words (a, of, or)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Pets enter, pet centre  Joining words 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>After eight, after rate  Joining words 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Greet guests, Greek guests  Joining words 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Section C Conversation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Could you say that again?  Understanding conversation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>‘Was that the question?’ he asked.  Reading aloud: ‘pronouncing punctuation’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>A shirt and a tie / a shirt and tie  Grouping words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Ehm …  Showing that you want to continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Well, anyway …  Telling a story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>I mean, it’s sort of like …  Understanding small talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Right, OK …  Understanding instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>‘Like father like son’ as they say  Quoting speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>He will win  Introduction to emphatic stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Schwartz …  Pedro Schwartz  Emphasising added details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>I think you’re in my seat  Emphasising important words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Chips or salad?  Emphasising contrasting alternatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Fifty? No, fifteen!  Emphasising corrections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Look who’s talking!  Introducing tones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Here? Yes, here!  Asking and checking tones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Where were you born?  Tones in asking for information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>We’re closed tomorrow  Tones in new and old information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Oh, really?  Continuing or finishing tones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>It’s fun, isn’t it?  Agreeing and disagreeing tones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>It was brilliant!  High tones</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Section D Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D1</td>
<td>Introduction to phonemic symbols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>Pronunciation test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>Guide for speakers of specific languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D4</td>
<td>Sound pairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D5</td>
<td>Sentence stress phrasebook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D6</td>
<td>Glossary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Key

166

### Acknowledgements

200
To the student

*English Pronunciation in Use* is a book to help students of English to work on pronunciation, for both speaking and understanding. It is written mainly for students of intermediate level.

**What will I need?**

You will need a cassette or CD player to listen to the recorded material that goes with this book. It will be very useful if you have equipment to record your own voice, so that you can hear your own progress. This symbol (A1) indicates the track number for recorded material i.e. CD or cassette A, track 1.

Also, when you are studying individual sounds, it is sometimes useful if you have a mirror. With this, you can compare the shape of your own mouth to the mouth in diagrams like this one from Unit 8.

See page 163 for a labelled diagram of the mouth and throat.

**How is *English Pronunciation in Use* organised?**

There are 60 units in the book. Each unit looks at a different point of pronunciation. Each unit has two pages. The page on the left has explanations and examples, and the page on the right has exercises. The 60 units are divided into three sections of 20 units each. Section A is about how to say and spell individual sounds. Section B is about joining sounds to make words and sentences. Section C is about pronunciation in conversation.

After the 60 units, there is a fourth section, Section D, which contains the following:

- Introduction to phonemic symbols
- Pronunciation test
- Guide for speakers of specific languages
- Sound pairs
- Sentence stress phrasebook
- Glossary

At the end of the book there is a Key with answers.

With the book, there is also a set of four cassettes or CDs, one for each section of the book.

**What order shall I do the units in?**

It is better if you balance the work that you do from the three sections: first, do a unit from Section A, then a unit from Section B, then a unit from Section C, then another unit from Section A, and so on.

So, for example, you could begin like this:

Unit 1, then Unit 21, then Unit 41, then Unit 2, etc. At the end of each unit, you will find a note telling you where to go next.

If you have problems in hearing the difference between individual sounds in Section A of the book, you will be directed to one of the exercises in Section D4 Sound pairs.
You may want to focus your work more closely. If so, here are more ideas:

- Do the *Pronunciation test* in Section D. Count your score for each section. If you did specially well in any one of the sections, then you may want to miss the units in that section of the book.
- Look at Section D3 Guide for speakers of specific languages. Find your own language (the languages are in alphabetical order). The notes there will tell you which units are less important for speakers of your language and which sound pairs in section D4 are recommended.

**Do I need to know the phonemic symbols?**

It is possible to use this book without knowing phonemic symbols. However, it is useful to learn them because they make it easier to analyse the pronunciation of words. Also, many dictionaries use phonemic symbols to show pronunciation. In Section D1 Introduction to phonemic symbols, you will find a table of the phonemic symbols, plus a set of puzzles to help you learn them.

**Is this book only about pronunciation in speaking?**

No, it isn't. Pronunciation is important for both listening and speaking. In many of the units, especially in Sections B and C, the pronunciation point is more important for listening than speaking. For example, when they are speaking fast, many native speakers join words together in certain ways. You need to be able to understand this when you hear it, but it does not matter if you do not speak in this way. People will still understand you. Pronunciation points like this are shown with a grey background and this sign:

![Important for listening]

It is your choice whether you want to just focus on listening, or whether you want to try to speak that way too.

**What accent of English is used in this book?**

For a model for you to copy when speaking, we have used only one accent, a Southern British accent. But when you are listening to people speaking English, you will hear many different accents. If you are not used to these, it can be very difficult to understand what is being said. For this reason, you will hear a variety of accents in some parts of the listening material for this book.

**What is the Sentence stress phrasebook?**

It can help you to speak more fluently if you say some very common expressions with a fixed pronunciation, like a single word. In Section D5 Sentence stress phrasebook, some common expressions are given, and they are grouped together by the way they sound: by their *sentence stress* or *rhythm*. You can practise listening and repeating these to improve your fluency.

**What is in the Glossary?**

In this book, there are some words which are specific to the subject of pronunciation. You can find an explanation of the meaning of these words in Section D6 Glossary.

**How should I use the recordings?**

When you are working with the recording, you should replay a track as often as you need to. When you are doing an exercise you may also need to pause the recording after each sentence to give you time to think or to write your answers. When you are instructed to repeat single words there is a space on the recording for you to do so, but if you are repeating whole sentences you will have to pause the recording each time.
To the teacher

Although *English Pronunciation in Use* has been written so that it can be used for self-study, it will work equally well in a class situation. In a classroom context, the learners can get immediate guidance and feedback from the teacher. Also, they can practise some of the dialogues and other exercises in pairs. You can direct students with particular pronunciation difficulties to do specific units on their own.

In order to simplify the jargon in the book, many of the terms you may be familiar with are not used. For example, the term *initial consonant cluster* is not used. The unit on initial consonant clusters is called *Unit 24 Oh, no snow! Consonants at the start of syllables*. The following is an explanation of how the book is organised, ending with the map of contents described in phonological terms.

Section A aims to cover the sounds of English and their main spellings. The units are organised by letters rather than sounds. The intention is that this would be a more intuitive route in for non-specialist users. At the same time, this organisation helps to highlight sound-spelling regularities in English.

The vowels are covered first via the five vowel letters of the alphabet, and their ‘long’ and ‘short’ pronunciations, for example the letter A as in *tare* or *tap*. The remaining vowel sounds are presented as vowels which typically occur before a letter R. The consonant sounds are presented through either their most common spelt letter, or by one of their main spellings. The ordering of these units is more or less alphabetical.

The units in Section A are not presented as minimal pairs. Vowels are paired according to their spelling, not their potential for being confused with one another. Consonants are paired mainly where they share the same place of articulation. The units were not organised as minimal pairs for two reasons:

- Any sound can form a minimal pair with a number of other sounds, not just one. Organising units according to minimal pairs would therefore lead to a huge number of units and a lot of duplication.
- Many minimal pairs will be redundant for any given learner, so learners need to be selective. Potentially confusing minimal pairs are gathered together in Section D4 *Sound pairs*. Learners are encouraged to select from these according to their own needs.

Alternatives are included for those areas of pronunciation which are especially susceptible to variation across different varieties of English. For example, where there is a letter R with no vowel after it, many speakers do not pronounce the R and many other speakers do pronounce it, and both varieties are presented.

Many vowel sounds are treated as local variants of vowel + R. For instance, the diphthong /aɪ/ is initially presented not as a sound in itself, but as a variant of /ɪ/ when it occurs before R or L.
Some of the pronunciation points in the book are potentially irrelevant to some learners. For instance, for learners whose aim is mainly to communicate with other non-native speakers of English, accurate production of the sounds /θ/ and /ð/ is probably not necessary. Research suggests that where speakers substitute these sounds with other approximations such as /t/ and /d/, communication is not impeded (Jennifer Jenkins: 2000)*. In many such cases, readers are advised of this fact in the units. These pronunciation points are nevertheless included. My feeling is that a distinction can be drawn between what we aim for and what we settle for. Thus, a learner might aim for /θ/ and settle for /t/ (or /s/).

Similarly, even in cases where a learner does aspire to communicate with native speakers, there are many pronunciation features where receptive competence would be sufficient. For instance, such a learner would need to understand speech with weak forms, but not necessarily produce it. This is indicated in the units by a grey background shade and the sign 'Important for listening'. Nevertheless, there may be exercises which ask the learner to produce such features. I have observed that in many cases, there is no better awareness-raiser than to attempt to produce, even if the aim is receptive competence.

Section B focuses on pronunciation units which are bigger than individual sounds. The units are in three blocks, dealing in turn with syllables, word stress and sentence stress. As the title of the section suggests, these features are looked at more or less in isolation from a communicative context. For instance, in the case of word stress, it is the form as it may appear in a dictionary that is dealt with here. Similarly, in the case of sentence stress, we focus on an unmarked form in Section B. For example, 'What do you think?' is presented with the stress pattern OooO. In a specific conversational context, this same sentence could be said with the stress pattern ooOo, but sentences in conversational context are dealt with in Section C rather than Section B.

Section C focuses on pronunciation features which emerge in the context of conversation. These include discourse organisation, prominence and tone. Note that there is a lot of grey shading in this section, indicating material that is more important for listening than for production. It is felt that while productive mastery of many features of intonation will be beyond the reach of many learners, they may nevertheless benefit from a receptive awareness of them.

Note: The material in Section D3 Guide for speakers of specific languages is based on the pronunciation notes in Learner English (Michael Swan and Bernard Smith: 2001)**. Nevertheless, I have had to extrapolate from the information presented there, as many of the minimal pairs presented in this book are not specifically mentioned in the pronunciation notes in that book.

---


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A Letters and sounds</th>
<th>B Syllables, words and sentences</th>
<th>C Conversation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Introduction to vowels and consonants</td>
<td>21 Introduction to syllables</td>
<td>41 Repair strategies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 The vowel sounds /eɪ/, /æ/</td>
<td>22 Introduction to word stress</td>
<td>42 Pronouncing punctuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 The consonant sounds /b/, /ð/</td>
<td>23 Introduction to sentence stress</td>
<td>43 Grouping words: chunking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 The consonant sounds /s/, /z/</td>
<td>24 Syllables: initial consonant clusters</td>
<td>44 Keeping your speaking turn: floor holding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 The consonant sounds /ð/, /t/</td>
<td>25 Syllables: final consonant clusters</td>
<td>45 Discourse markers in story telling: back-channel responses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 The vowel sounds /iː/, /e/</td>
<td>26 Syllable structure and -s endings</td>
<td>46 Discourse markers: ‘throw away’ words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Weak vowels /ə/, /ɪ/</td>
<td>27 Syllable structure and -ed endings</td>
<td>47 Discourse markers: signalling next stage: change-of-state marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 The consonant sounds /ʃ/, /v/</td>
<td>28 Word stress: two-syllable words</td>
<td>48 Pitch in pronouncing direct speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 The consonant sounds /ʒ/, /k/</td>
<td>29 Word stress: compounds</td>
<td>49 Contrastive stress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 The sounds /h/, /w/, /j/</td>
<td>30 Word stress: suffixes with penultimate stress</td>
<td>50 New and old information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 The vowel sounds /ɑː/, /ɪː/</td>
<td>31 Word stress: suffixes with ante-penultimate stress</td>
<td>51 Emphatic stress on important information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 The consonant sounds /ʃ/, /ɹ/, /tʃ/</td>
<td>32 Sentence stress: short imperatives</td>
<td>52 Contrastive stress on alternatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 The consonant sounds /tʃ/, /ɹ/</td>
<td>33 Sentence stress: unstressed words</td>
<td>53 Contrastive stress: correcting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 The vowel sounds /æː(r)/, /eə(r)/</td>
<td>34 Sentence stress: weak forms of contractions of pronouns</td>
<td>54 Introduction to tone: intonational idioms; fall and rise tones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 The consonant sounds /m/, /n/, /ŋ/</td>
<td>35 Sentence stress: weak forms of contractions of be</td>
<td>55 Intonation: open and check questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 The vowels sounds /əʊ/, /o/</td>
<td>36 Sentence stress: weak forms of contractions of auxiliaries</td>
<td>56 Tonic stress placement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 The consonant sounds /θ/, /ð/</td>
<td>37 Sentence stress: weak forms of articles, prepositions and connectors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 The vowel sounds /ɑː/, /ʊ/, /uː/</td>
<td>38 Linking consonant to vowel</td>
<td>57 Intonation: old and new information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 The vowel sounds /æː(r)/, /eː(r)/</td>
<td>39 Linking vowel to vowel</td>
<td>58 Intonation: continuing or finishing tones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 The vowel sounds /ɔɪ/, /au/</td>
<td>40 Assimilation and elision</td>
<td>59 Intonation: opinion, disagreement, tag questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Introduction to syllables</td>
<td>42 Pronouncing punctuation</td>
<td>60 High tones: evaluative comment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Bye, buy
Introducing letters and sounds

In writing, words are made of letters. In speech, words are made of sounds. Letters are not always the same as sounds. For example, the words *key* and *car* begin with the same sound, but the letters are different. We can see this clearly if we read the two words in phonemic symbols: /ki:/, /ka/. In the examples below, word pairs have the same pronunciation but different spelling:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>bye</th>
<th>sun</th>
<th>son</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>week</td>
<td>weigh</td>
<td>way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠ Note: There are some exercises to help you learn the phonemic symbols in Section D1.

There are two kinds of sounds: consonant sounds (C) and vowel sounds (V). For example, in *duck*, there are three sounds, consonant–vowel–consonant (CVC). The number of sounds in a word is not usually the same as the number of letters. We can see this if we write the word using phonemic symbols (see Section D1). For example, *duck* is /dʌk/.

writers often play with the sounds in words. For example, if they are finding a name for a cartoon character, they might:

- repeat the first sound, for example *Donald Duck*.
- repeat the final sound or sounds (this is called rhyme), for example *Ronald McDonald*.

Listen to these examples of names and expressions with sound-play. Notice that the writer is playing with the *sound*, not the spelling. For example, in *Dennis the Menace*, the last three sounds of the words are the same, but the spelling is completely different.

- Mickey Mouse
- Rudolf the red-nosed reindeer
- Dennis the Menace
- Bugs Bunny
- news and views
- rock and roll
- wine and dine

While the car’s away, the mice will play.

There are probably some sounds in English which do not exist in your language, and others which are similar but not exactly the same. This can make it difficult to hear and make the distinction between two similar words in English.

Listen to these pairs. Are any of them difficult for you?

- boat – vote
- hit – heat
- so – show
- sung – sun
- wine – vine
- wet – wait

⚠ Note: To find out which sounds are usually easy or difficult for speakers of your language, see Section D3 *Guide for speakers of specific languages.*
Exercises

1.1 In this story, there are 12 incorrect words. The correct word is pronounced the same as the incorrect one, but the spelling is different. Correct them using words from the box.

son some meat way threw pears sent week buy piece road two

Last week, I sent my sun Jamie to the shops to bye sum food. He got a piece of meet and too pairs. On the weigh home, the bag broke. The food fell onto the rode and got dirty. In the end, Jamie through the food in the bin.

1.2 How many sounds are there in each word? Write the order of consonant sounds (C) and vowel sounds (V).

EXAMPLE
night CVC (three sounds: first a consonant, then a vowel and finally another consonant)

1 dog
2 rabbit
3 frog
4 gorilla
5 snake
6 bee

1.3 Listen to these possible names of cartoon animals. Do they have the same first sounds? (Write A.) Do they rhyme? (Write B.)

EXAMPLE Sam the lamb B

1 Phil the fox
2 Mary the canary
3 Ida the spider
4 Claire the bear
5 Polly the parrot
6 Deborah the zebra
7 Myrtle the turtle
8 Kitty the cat

1.4 Listen to these sounds. Do you have a similar sound in your language? If you do, write a tick (✓).

1 /ʃ/ (shoe)
2 /ɔɪ/ (girl)
3 /æ/ (hat)
4 /z/ (zoo)
5 /dʒ/ (June)
6 /ɔʊ/ (soap)
7 /θ/ (thing)
8 /l/ (life)

Now go to Unit 21
Plane, plan

The vowel sounds /eɪ/ and /æ/

When you say the letters of the alphabet, A has the long vowel sound /eɪ/. You hear this sound in the word plane. But the letter A is also pronounced as the short vowel sound /æ/, as in the word plan.

- Listen to the sound /eɪ/ on its own. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /eɪ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

| target /eɪ/ | meat       | mate       | met       |
|            | come       | came       | calm      |
|            | white      | wait       | wet       |
|            | buy        | bay        | boy       |

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.
  play    played    place
  grey    grade     great
  aim      age       eight

"The rain in Spain falls mainly on the plain."

- Listen to the sound /æ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this short vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /æ/ in the words and compare it with the words on each side.

| target /æ/ | mud         | mad        | made      |
|            | sing        | sang       | sung      |
|            | pen         | pan        | pain      |
|            | hot         | hat        | heart     |

"The fat cat sat on the man's black hat."

In most accents, the following words have the vowel /æ/: ask, dance, castle, bath, fast. But in South East England, speakers change the A sound in words such as these to /eɪ/. (For more about /æ/, see Unit 14.)

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/eɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/æ/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

2.1 Write words for the things in the picture in the correct part of the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/ei/</th>
<th>/æ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cake</td>
<td>apple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 These words all contain the vowel sound /æ/. Make another word with the same consonant sounds, but changing the vowel sound to /ei/.

**EXAMPLES**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>pam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>mad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pan</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tap</td>
<td>plane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


2.3 Listen and circle the word with a different vowel sound.

**EXAMPLE** black (want) mad hand

1 sad bag salt tap
2 far fat map add
3 watch catch match land
4 rain said fail train
5 case lake name care
6 space change plate square
7 break great heat weight

Then listen again and check.

2.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Man or men? Did you see the *man / men*?
2 Cap or cup? Have you seen my *cap / cup*?
3 Hat or heart? She put her hand on her *hat / heart*.
4 Pain or pen? I've got a *pain / pen* in my hand.
5 Hay or hair? There are bugs in this *hay / hair*.

**Follow up:** Record yourself saying the sentences in 2.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Back, pack
The consonant sounds /b/ and /p/

When you say the alphabet, the letters B and P have the sounds /bi:/ and /pi:/ In words, they have the consonant sounds /b/ and /p/.

- Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make these sounds:
  - Look to the sounds /b/ and /p/.
  - The mouth is in the same position for both sounds, however in the sound /b/ there is voice from the throat, there is no voice from the throat. Instead, there is a small explosion of air when the lips open.

- Now listen to the sound /b/ on its own.
- Listen to the target sound /b/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

  | vest | best | vest |
  | cups | cubs | cups |
  | covered | cupboard | covered |

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.
  - buy  bird  bread
  - rubber  about  able
  - job  web  globe

- Listen to the sound /p/ on its own.
- Listen to the target sound /p/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

  | full | pull | full |
  | cubs | cups | cubs |
  | coffee | copy | coffee |

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.
  - park  please  price
  - open  apple  spring
  - tape  help  jump

"Bernie brought a big breakfast back to bed."

"Pat put purple paint in the pool."

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/b/</td>
<td>B (job) BB (rubber) B is sometimes silent (comb).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/p/</td>
<td>P (open) PP (apple) PH pronounced /f/ (phone). P is sometimes silent (psychology).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

3.1 First read this conversation to the end, and then write the letter 'b' or 'p' in each gap. Listen and check your answers.

Sid: Where are the ___ears?
Joe: _____ears?!! Did you say _____ears?
Sid: No, _____ears, you know, fruit!
Joe: Oh, I see, _____ears with a P! They're in the _____ack.
Sid: What, in the _____ack of the truck?
Joe: No, in the _____ack, you know, with a P!
Sid: Oh, I see, _____ack with a P! Would you like one?
Joe: No, I'll have a _____each, please.
Sid: A beach?!?

Follow up: Play the recording again, pausing it after each of Sid's lines. You say Joe's lines before listening to him saying them.

3.2 The word ape contains the two sounds /eɪ/ and /p/. If you reverse the sounds, you get the word pay /peɪ/. Reverse the sounds in these words and write the new word.

Example

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 peach</th>
<th>2 cab</th>
<th>3 lip</th>
<th>4 step</th>
<th>5 keeps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>____________</td>
<td>____________</td>
<td>____________</td>
<td>____________</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3 Listen. In one word in each group, the 'b' or 'p' is not pronounced. Circle the word.

Example
double (doubt) Dublin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 lamb</th>
<th>2 crab</th>
<th>3 cup</th>
<th>4 photo</th>
<th>5 recipe</th>
<th>6 possibly</th>
<th>7 Cambridge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>label</td>
<td>robbed</td>
<td>cupboard</td>
<td>potato</td>
<td>repeat</td>
<td>psychology</td>
<td>combine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.4 Listen and tick (✓) the sentence you hear, A or B. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 There's a bear in that tree.</td>
<td>There's a pear in that tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 He had the beach to himself.</td>
<td>He had the peach to himself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 They burned it.</td>
<td>They've earned it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Say 'boil'.</td>
<td>Save oil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 This is a nicer pear.</td>
<td>This is a nice affair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Would you like a copy?</td>
<td>Would you like a coffee?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 3.4, choosing sentence A or B. Make a note of which you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which sentences you said?
Rice, rise
The consonant sounds /s/ and /z/

When you say the alphabet, the letters C and S are pronounced /si:/ and /es/. Notice they both have the consonant sound /s/. But S is also often pronounced as the consonant sound /z/.

- Listen to the sounds /s/ and /z/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make these consonant sounds. Notice that in the sound /s/, there is no voice from the throat. It sounds like the noise of a snake. In the sound /z/, there is voice from the throat. It sounds like the noise of a bee.

- Now listen to the sound /s/ on its own.
- Listen to the target sound /s/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

  _target /s/

  zoo  Sue  zoo  rise  rice  rise  shave  save  shave  thing  sing  thing

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

  sad  city  science  scream  glasses  concert  lost  bus  place  class

- Listen to the sound /z/ on its own.
- Listen to the target sound /z/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

  _target /z/

  Sue  zoo  Sue  place  plays  place  breathe  breeze  breathe  beige  bays  beige

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

  zoo  zero  lazy  easy  scissors  exact  size  wise  times

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/s/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S (sad), SS (class)</td>
<td>SC (science)</td>
<td>X can spell /ks/ (mix).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C (place)</td>
<td></td>
<td>S is not always pronounced /s/ (sugar, rise, plays).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/z/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z (zero), S (nose)</td>
<td>ZZ (buzz)</td>
<td>X spells /gz/ (exact).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SS (scissors)</td>
<td></td>
<td>-SE at the end of a word is usually pronounced /z/ (rise).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Pronunciation may be connected to grammar: close /kloaz/ = adjective  close /kloaz/ = verb  use /juz/ = noun  use /juzz/ = verb  house /haoz/ = noun  house /haoz/ = verb
Exercises

4.1 Find a way from Start to Finish. You may not pass a square if the word contains the sound /z/. You can move horizontally (↔) or vertically (↑) only.

START

spots squares prize since six sports

streets wise sells sits exact escapes

rice rise sense science lose lost

oasis desert smokes songs crisps box

place face snacks seas voice boxes

plays phase nose smiles focus concert

FINISH

4.2 Complete this conversation using words from the box. Then listen and check.

SID: Alice’s __________ is nice.

JOE: Are nice, Sid. Plural. Her __________ are nice.

SID: I’m not talking about her __________ , I’m talking about her __________ !

JOE: Oh, I see, __________ with a C.

SID: That’s right. She has nice __________ .

JOE: How can __________ be nice? It’s too cold.

SID: Not __________ , you fool! __________ : E-Y-E-S!

Follow up: Play the recording again, pausing it after each of Sid’s lines. You say Joe’s lines before listening to him saying them.

4.3 Listen to the sentences. Look at the words in italics. Underline the words in italics which contain the sound /s/ and circle the ones which contain the sound /z/. Then listen again and repeat.

EXAMPLE You can have my tent. It’s no __________ to me. I never __________ it.

1 I’m not going to __________ you. You never take my __________ .
2 Your tooth is __________ . You’ll __________ it if you’re not careful.
3 The shop’s very __________ to home, and it doesn’t __________ till late.
4 I can’t __________ people who drop litter. There’s no __________ for it.

4.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Price or prize? I got a good __________ / __________ for that painting.
2 He sat or he’s at? I don’t know where __________ / __________.
3 Suit or shoot? They didn’t __________ / __________ him.
4 Saved or shaved? I’ve __________ / __________ed a lot in the past few days.
5 Sink or think? We didn’t __________ / __________.
6 Closed or clothed? They were __________ / __________ed for the cold weather.

(⇒ sound pair 31) (⇒ sound pair 31)
(⇒ sound pair 32) (⇒ sound pair 32)
(⇒ sound pair 33) (⇒ sound pair 33)

Now go to Unit 24
Down town

The consonant sounds /d/ and /t/

- Listen to the sounds /d/ and /t/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make these consonant sounds. Notice that in the sound /d/ there is voice from the throat. In /t/, there is no voice from the throat. Instead, there is a small explosion of air out of the mouth when the tongue moves away from the ridge behind the teeth.

- Now listen to the sound /d/ on its own.

- Listen to the target sound /d/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>town</th>
<th>down</th>
<th>town</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>road</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

dog  dead  dream
address  advice  sudden
third  food  mind

“David’s daughter didn’t dance but David’s dad did.”

- Listen to the sound /t/ on its own.

- Listen to the target sound /t/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>die</th>
<th>tie</th>
<th>die</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>heart</td>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>each</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>each</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

talk  Thomas  train  twelve
butter  until  hated
night  worked  west

“Betty bought a tub of butter.”

- In many accents, including American accents, the letter T is pronounced like a /d/ when it is between two vowel sounds. So in America, writer /raitə/ sounds like rider /raidə/.
- In some accents, for example in some parts of London, the T between two vowel sounds is made not with the tongue but by stopping the air at the back of the throat to make a short silence. So in these accents, butter is pronounced bu’er. In fast speech, many speakers drop the /d/ or /t/ when they come between two other consonant sounds. So facts /fækts/ sounds like fax /fæk/.

### Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>rarely</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>D (dog), DD (address)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>T (tie), TT (butter)</td>
<td>(E)D past tense ending</td>
<td>TH (Thomas)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T can be silent (listen).
Exercises

5.1 Complete these rhymes with words from the box. Then listen and check. The second time you listen to the rhymes pause after each line and repeat it.

rude said late head fight polite food wait

There was a young lady called Kate,
Who always got out of bed ----- late. 
The first thing she -------------
When she lifted her -------------
Was 'I thought it was better to -------------' .

There was a young waiter called Dwight,
Who didn't like being ---------.
If you asked him for ----------,
He was terribly -------------
And invited you out for a -------------.

5.2 Listen to and repeat these pairs of words. Then put them into the sentences below and listen and repeat the sentences.

build / built wide / white weighed / weight heard / hurt
down / town dry / try send / sent

**EXAMPLE**
Last year, Tom ----------- more than Sam, but now they both have the same ----------- .
1 It wasn't -------------- in a day; it takes ages to ------------- a cathedral like that.
2 When you're out in the mountains, you have to ----------- to stay --------------.
3 He ------------- it to the wrong address, so he had to ------------- another copy.
4 It ------------- my ears when I ------------- that noise.
5 The ----------- sofa is too ------------- to go through that door.
6 We went ------------- the hill and into the --------------.

5.3 Circle the word which does not have the sound /t/. You can use a dictionary.

**EXAMPLE** asked castle letter first

1 eight Thames whistle walked 4 ended wished left hoped
2 Thomas needed time liked 5 whiter greater soften written
3 listen winter eaten after

5.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Wider or whiter? Choose Dentocream for a wider / whiter smile!  (≈ sound pair 34)
2 Dry or try? You have to dry / try it out.  (≈ sound pair 34)
3 Breeding or breathing? These animals aren't breeding / breathing!  (≈ sound pair 35)
4 Thought or taught? She thought / taught for a long time.  (≈ sound pair 35)
5 Aid or age? For us, aid / age is not important.  (≈ sound pair 36)
6 What or watch? What / Watch a game!  (≈ sound pair 36)
Meet, met
The vowel sounds /ɪː/ and /eə/

When you say the letters of the alphabet, E has the long vowel sound /ɪː/. You hear this sound in the word meet. But the letter E can also be pronounced as the short vowel sound /eə/, as in the word met.

- Listen to the sound /ɪː/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ɪː/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /ɪː/</th>
<th>met</th>
<th>meat</th>
<th>mate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>least</td>
<td>last</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bay</td>
<td>bee</td>
<td>beer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Steve keeps the cheese in the freezer."

When there is an /ɪː/ sound before the letter R at the end of a word, many speakers add the vowel /ə/ and do not pronounce the /ɪː/. Compare the vowels in these words: knee – near, pea – pier, be – bear. Many dictionaries give this vowel before R as /ə/.

- Listen to the sound /eə/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this short vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /eə/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /eə/</th>
<th>man</th>
<th>men</th>
<th>mean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>heard</td>
<td>head</td>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mate</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>meat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"It's best to rest, said the vet to the pet."

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ɪː/</td>
<td>EE (feet), EA (eat) E-E (scene)</td>
<td>E (me) IE (piece)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/eə/</td>
<td>E (men)</td>
<td>EA (death), IE (friend) A (many), Al (said)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

6.1 Listen to the letters of the alphabet. If the letter has the sound /iː/, write ee under it. If it has the sound /e/, write e under it. If the letter does not have /iː/ or /e/, don’t write anything.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>J</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| N | O | P | Q | R | S | T | U | V | W | X | Y | Z |

6.2 Change the vowel sound from /e/ to /iː/ in these words. Write the new words.

**EXAMPLE**  met  meat

| 1 check | 6 sweat |
| 2 red | 7 well |
| 3 bet | 8 set |
| 4 men | 9 fed |
| 5 fell | 10 led |

6.3 Find a way from Start to Finish. You may pass a square only if the word in it has the sound /iː/.
You can move horizontally (↔) or vertically (↓) only.

**START**

```
leave         earth       health       reach       teach       meat

dream       dead         cream       jeans       steak       cheat

east         bread       tea         death       heat         peak

beach       break       peace       search       leaf       meant

seat         please      team        early       beat        bean

head         bear        wear        dreamt       sweat       clean
```

**FINISH**

6.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Men or man? Did you see the *men / man*?  
2 Pen or pain? I’ve got a *pen / pain* in my hand.  
3 Bear or beer? That’s a strong *bear / beer*.  
4 Live or leave? I want to *live / leave*.  
5 Bed or bird? Did you see the *bed / bird*?  
6 Left or lift? You should take the *left / lift*.

**Follow up:** Record yourself saying the sentences in 6.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Carrot, cabbage

Unstressed vowels /ə/ and /ʌ/

In words with two or more syllables, at least one syllable is weak (does not have stress).

- Listen to these words which have two syllables, and the second syllable is weak.
  
  carrot  cabbage

- In weak syllables, native speakers of English very often use the weak vowel sounds /ə/ and /ʌ/.
  - Listen again to the two words above: the O in carrot is pronounced /ə/ and the A in cabbage is pronounced /ʌ/.
  
- Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make the sound /ə/.
  - Listen to these examples and repeat them. The weak vowels in the unstressed syllables in bold are pronounced /ə/.

  weak A: away banana woman sugar
  weak E: garden paper under
  weak O: police doctor correct
  weak U: support figure colour

  "I ate an apple and a banana in a cinema in Canada."

- In words like paper, sugar, colour, the final R is not pronounced in many accents, so vista /ˈvɪsta/ rhymes with sister /ˈsɪsta/, for example.
  - Many speakers of English (especially non-native speakers) do not change vowels in weak syllables to /ə/.

- Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make the sound /ʌ/.
  - Listen to these examples and repeat them. The weak vowels in the unstressed syllables in black are pronounced /ʌ/.

  weak A: orange cabbage
  weak E: dances wanted begin women
  weak I: music walking
  weak U: lettuce minute

  "Alex's lettuces tasted like cabbages."

Spelling

Notice in the examples above that nearly any vowel spelling may be pronounced as a weak vowel.

⚠️ Note: Often, whole words are pronounced as weak syllables, with a weak vowel. For example: half an hour, going to work, Jim was late. See Unit 33.
Exercises

7.1
Listen to the poem. Circle the words which rhyme.

Mr Porter loves his pasta.
No one else can eat it faster.
Mr Porter’s sister Rita,
Buys the pasta by the metre.
Mr Porter’s older daughter,
Boils it all in tubs of water.

7.2
Listen. In each sentence or phrase there are two vowels which are not /a/. Circle them.

**EXAMPLE** an apple and a banana

1. from Canada to China
2. The parrot was asleep.
3. The cinema was open.
4. the photographer’s assistant
5. a question and an answer
6. a woman and her husband
7. a pasta salad

7.3
Write the words in the correct part of the table. Then listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>orange</th>
<th>women</th>
<th>return</th>
<th>collect</th>
<th>market</th>
<th>begin</th>
<th>visit</th>
<th>asleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>salad</td>
<td>teaches</td>
<td>needed</td>
<td>letter</td>
<td>sofa</td>
<td>peaches</td>
<td>quarter</td>
<td>women</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

vowel in weak syllable = /a/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>woman</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

vowel in weak syllable = /i/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>orange</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

7.4
Listen and circle the word you hear.

1. Woman or women? What time did the woman / women arrive?
2. Dress or address? Where’s Kate’s dress / address?
3. Manager’s or manages? The team manager’s / manages well.
4. Teacher’s or teaches? The German teacher’s / teaches English.
5. Weight’s or waiter’s? The weight’s / waiter’s heavy.
6. Dancer’s or dances? The woman dancer’s / dances fast.
7. Officer’s or office’s? The officer’s / office’s here.
8. Away or way? Take that away / way.
9. Driver or drive? What a nice driver / drive!
10. Racer’s or races? The racer’s / races finished.

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 7.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Few, view
The consonant sounds /f/ and /v/

A35a • Listen to the two sounds /f/ and /v/. Look at the mouth
diagram to see how to make these consonant sounds. Notice
that in the sound /f/, there is no voice from the throat, and
when you say this sound, you can feel the air on your hand
when you put it in front of your mouth. In /v/, there is voice
from the throat.

A35b • Now listen to the sound /f/ on its own.

A35c • Listen to the target sound /f/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>view</th>
<th>few</th>
<th>view</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>leaf</td>
<td>leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>free</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>copy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A35d • Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

photo  fly  freeze
offer  selfish  gift
knife  stuff  laugh

A36a • Listen to the sound /v/ on its own.

A36b • Listen to the target sound /v/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ferry</th>
<th>very</th>
<th>ferry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>best</td>
<td>vest</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>vet</td>
<td>wet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than</td>
<td>van</td>
<td>than</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A36c • Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

visa  vote  voice
river  wives  loved
wave  twelve  of

"Vera drove to Venice in a van."

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/f/</td>
<td>F (fell)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FF (offer)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PH (photo)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GH (laugh)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/v/</td>
<td>V (never)</td>
<td>F (of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The vowel is shorter before /f/ than /v/, for example in
leaf and leave. If you have difficulty making the
difference, exaggerate the length of the vowel in leave.
Exercises

8.1 How many /f/ and /v/ sounds are there when you say these numbers? Write the number.

Example: 55

1 512       2 745       3 5        4 11.75       5 7,474

8.2 Complete this conversation using words from the box. Then listen and check.

fan    van    wife’s    wives

Sid: My ________ left me.
Joe: Your __________ left you? How many __________ did you have, Sid?
Sid: One wife. And now she has left me.
Joe: Oh, I see, __________ with an F, not __________ with a V!
Sid: That’s right! Yes, she took the __________ and drove off.
Joe: What did she want the __________ for?
Sid: I said __________ , you know, a kind of vehicle.
Joe: Oh, I see: __________ with a V, not __________ with an F!

Follow up: Play the recording again, pausing after each of Sid’s lines.
You say Joe’s lines before listening to him saying them.

8.3 Find 12 words beginning or ending with /f/ or /v/.
The words are written horizontally (→) or vertically (↓). Note that the last letter is not always F or V. Use all the letters.

D        C        L        A        U        G        H        I
R        O        W        S        A        V        E        F
I        U        I        L        F        I        V        E
V        G        F        I        H        A        V        E
E        H        E        V        G        O        L        F
O        F        F        E        S        A        F        E

8.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Thief’s or thieves’? These are the thief’s / thieves’ fingerprints.
2 Few or view? She’s painted a few / view.
3 Copy or coffee? Do you want a copy / coffee?
4 Boat or vote? What are you going to do with your boat / vote?
5 Worse or verse? I don’t know which is worse / verse.
6 Free or three? We got free / three tickets!

(sound pair 37)
(sound pair 37)
(sound pair 30)
(sound pair 29)
(sound pair 38)
(sound pair 39)

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 8.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?

Now go to Unit 28
Gate, Kate
The consonant sounds /g/ and /k/

- Listen to the two sounds /g/ and /k/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make these sounds. Notice that in the sound /g/, there is voice from the throat. In /k/, there is no voice from the throat. When you say this sound, you can feel the air on your hand when you put it in front of your mouth.

- Now listen to the sound /g/ on its own.
- Listen to the target sound /g/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target /g/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loch*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This is the Scottish word for lake: the final consonant sound does not exist in English.

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ghost</th>
<th>guess</th>
<th>green</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>ago</td>
<td>angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dog</td>
<td>egg</td>
<td>league</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen to the sound /k/ on its own.
- Listen to the target sound /k/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target /k/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dogs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keep</th>
<th>club</th>
<th>quick</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>school</td>
<td>soccer</td>
<td>taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>comic</td>
<td>ache</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The king cooked the carrots and the queen cut the cake.

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| /g/   | G (go)     | GH (ghost)| G can be silent (sign, foreign).
|       | GG (bigger)| GU (guest)| The vowel sound is a bit longer before /g/ than before /k/ in pairs like bag and back. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>beginning</th>
<th>middle</th>
<th>end</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>C (can)</td>
<td>CC (soccer)</td>
<td>K (milk)</td>
<td>QU spells the sound /kw/, e.g. quick /kwɪk/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>K (king)</td>
<td>CK (locker)</td>
<td>CK (black)</td>
<td>X spells the sound /ks/, e.g. (six) /sɪks/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C (comic)</td>
<td>In some words beginning with K, the K is silent, e.g. know, knife.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

9.1 Add the sound /g/ or /k/ to the beginning of these words and write the new words. Remember: think of sounds, not spelling. For example, if you add /k/ to the beginning of water /ˈwɔːtə/, you get quarter /ˈkwɔːtə/. The sound is similar but the spelling is completely different!

EXAMPLE eight  
1 up  
2 aim  
3 ache  
4 round  
5 old  
6 lime  
7 air  
8 all  
9 rate  
10 ill

9.2 Complete the second line to rhyme with the first line, using a word from the box. Then listen and repeat.

rocks cake ache locker key bigger queue kitchen six ask

EXAMPLE He dressed for soccer, And closed his locker.

1 Kelly Collins couldn’t figure,  
   How to make the plants grow. 

2 I’d like five bricks,  
   No, make it! 

3 Mr Quinn ate so much steak,  
   He came home with a stomach.

4 I saw a fox,  
   Behind those. 

5 Clara saw a friend she knew,  
   Standing quietly in the.

9.3 Complete this conversation using words from the box. Then listen and check.

SID: Hey, there’s the monster!
JOE: That’s just a .
SID: Yes, it’s Ness. 
JOE: No, not . I mean , 
   you know, from a tree!
SID: I’ve never seen a tree with a .

JOE: No, not a that you open with a key; a with a G!

Follow up: Play the recording again, pausing it after each of Sid’s lines. You say Joe’s lines before listening to him saying them.

9.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Ghost or coast? Did you see the ghost / coast?
2 Glasses or classes? I don’t need glasses / classes.
3 Bag or back? My bag’s / back’s wet.
4 Goat or coat? She’s lost her goat / coat.

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 9.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Hear, we're, year
The sounds /h/, /w/ and /j/

The sounds /h/, /w/ and /j/ only happen before a vowel sound.

A
- Listen to the sound /h/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound.
- Listen to the target sound /h/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /h/</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old  hold  old</td>
<td>hair  head  who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art  heart  art</td>
<td>ahead  perhaps  behave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>force  horse  force</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheet  heat  sheet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some speakers, e.g. in London, do not pronounce the H, so hair /heə/ sounds the same as air /eə/.

B
- Listen to the sound /w/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound.
- Listen to the target sound /w/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /w/</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vest  west  vest</td>
<td>wage  what  one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of air aware  of air</td>
<td>language  quick  square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good  would  good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gwyn  win  Gwyn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Wendy went away twice a week."

C
- Listen to the sound /j/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound.
- Listen to the target sound /j/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /j/</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>joke  yolk  joke</td>
<td>year  used  euro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaw  your  jaw</td>
<td>few  cure  view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fool  fuel  fool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasure  player  pleasure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"We didn't use euros in Europe a few years ago."

In American, the /j/ is dropped from words like new, student, tune, so for example newspaper /ˈnjʊsˈpeɪpər/ sounds like noose paper /ˈnjuːsˈpeɪpər/.

D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spelling</th>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>rarely</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/h/</td>
<td>H (hill)</td>
<td>WH (who)</td>
<td>H is often silent (hour, honest).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/w/</td>
<td>W (will), WH (when)</td>
<td>0 (one, once)</td>
<td>The letters QU usually spell /kw/ (quite).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/j/</td>
<td>Y (you), I (view), E (few), U (cute)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Exercises

#### 10.1 Add one of these sounds to the start of these words to make other words: /h/, /j/, /w/.

Think of **sounds**, not spelling!

**Example** hair, where

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 earth</th>
<th>6 eyes</th>
<th>11 I'll</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 ear</td>
<td>7 all</td>
<td>12 eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 or</td>
<td>8 aid</td>
<td>13 ache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 in</td>
<td>9 ill</td>
<td>14 eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 eight</td>
<td>10 art</td>
<td>15 old</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 10.2 In these groups of words, three of the words begin with the same consonant sound and one of the words begins with a different sound. Circle the one with the different sound. You can use a dictionary.

**Example** hour, half, home, high

| 1 union used under university | 4 year euro uniform untie |
| 2 water whale whole window   | 5 how honest healthy happy |
| 3 when who where which       | 6 one write world waste   |

#### 10.3 Each sentence contains four or five examples of one of these sounds: /h/, /w/, /j/.

Write the phonemic letter under the sounds in the sentences.

**Example** A fusion of Cuban and European music. /j/

| 1 Your uniform used to be yellow. /j/ |
| 2 Haley’s horse hurried ahead. /h/  |
| 3 This is a quiz with twenty quick questions. /w/ |
| 4 We went to work at quarter to twelve. /w/ |
| 5 New York University student’s union. /j/ |
| 6 The hen hid behind the hen house. /h/ |
| 7 Which language would you like to work in? /w/ |

#### 10.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Art or heart? This is the *art / heart* of the country. (⇒ sound pair 41)
2 Hearing or earring? She’s lost her *hearing / earring*. (⇒ sound pair 41)
3 West or vest? The *west / vest* is very warm. (⇒ sound pair 38)
4 Aware of or air? They weren’t made *aware / of air*. (⇒ sound pair 38)
5 Use or juice? What’s the *use / juice*? (⇒ sound pair 42)
6 Heat or sheet? I can’t sleep in this *heat / sheet*. (⇒ sound pair 43)

**Follow up:** Record yourself saying the sentences in 10.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Wine, win
The vowel sounds /aɪ/ and /ɪ/

When you say the letters of the alphabet, I has the long vowel sound /aɪ/. You hear this sound in the word wine. But the letter I is also pronounced as the short vowel sound /ɪ/, as in the word bin.

- Listen to the sound /aɪ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /aɪ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mate</th>
<th>might</th>
<th>meet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bay</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>tape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>quiet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Nile crocodiles have the widest smiles."

When the long I is before R or L, many speakers put the vowel /aɪ/ between them. So, for example, hire sounds like higher. Here are some more examples: fire, tyre, child while smile, style, file, wild.

- Listen to the sound /ɪ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this short vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ɪ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>peak</th>
<th>pick</th>
<th>pack</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wheel</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feet</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Tim bit a bit of Kitty's biscuit."

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/aɪ/</td>
<td>ɪ-E (smile), IE (die) Y (cry)</td>
<td>IGH (high), UY (buy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɪ/</td>
<td>ɪ (win)</td>
<td>Y (gym)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Exercises

11.1 Make words with these beginnings and endings and write them in the correct part of the table.

| beginnings: wi li mi ni fi ti si qui |
| endings: ght fe t ce ne me le de ll sh te n |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>words with the vowel /aɪ/</th>
<th>words with the vowel /ɪ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.2 Read the dialogue. Circle the sound /aɪ/ and underline /ɪ/. Count them and write the number at the end of the line.

A: Why did Jim hit Bill?       /aɪ/ = 1       /ɪ/ = 4
B: Well, Jim’s a guy who likes a fight.       /aɪ/ =       /ɪ/ =       
A: But Bill’s twice his size.       /aɪ/ =       /ɪ/ =       
B: Yeah, that’s why Jim got a black eye and a thick lip.       /aɪ/ =       /ɪ/ =       
A: And Bill’s got a big smile.       /aɪ/ =       /ɪ/ =       
B: That’s right!

Follow up: On the recording you will hear A’s lines. You say B’s lines.

11.3 The word knife contains the three sounds /n/, /aɪ/ and /f/. If you reverse the sounds, you get the word fine /faɪn/. Reverse the sounds in these words.

**Example** sign  nice

1 might  5 pitch
2 lick  6 tick
3 lip  7 dice
4 kiss  8 lights

11.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Live or leave? I don’t want to live / leave here.  (⇒ sound pair 10)
2 Fill or feel? Can you fill / feel it?  (⇒ sound pair 10)
3 Litter or letter? Who dropped the litter / letter?  (⇒ sound pair 13)
4 Lift or left? You should take the lift / left.  (⇒ sound pair 13)

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 11.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Sheep, jeep, cheap
The consonant sounds /ʃ/, /dʒ/ and /tʃ/

- Listen to the sound /ʃ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this consonant sound. Notice that there is no voice from the throat, and you can feel the air on your hand when you put it in front of your mouth. If you add voice from the throat, you get the sound /ʒ/, as in television, but this sound is not common in English.
- Listen to the target sound /ʃ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /ʃ/</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sort</td>
<td>should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suit</td>
<td>fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>nation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>ocean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash</td>
<td>wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>push</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Sharon shouldn’t wash her shoes in the shower.”

- Listen to the sounds /dʒ/ and /tʃ/. Look at the mouth diagram in C below to see how to make these consonant sounds. With /tʃ/ there is no voice from the throat, with /dʒ/ there is. Notice that you can make the sound /ʃ/ into a continuous sound, but you cannot do this with /tʃ/ and /dʒ/.
- Now listen to the sound /dʒ/ on its own.
- Listen to the target sound /dʒ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /dʒ/</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeep</td>
<td>general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tune</td>
<td>danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td>agenda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juice</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaw</td>
<td>age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>village</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Ginger spilt orange juice on George’s jacket.”

- Listen to the sound /tʃ/ on its own.
- Listen to the target sound /tʃ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /tʃ/</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jeep</td>
<td>chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeep</td>
<td>chicken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share</td>
<td>kitchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trips</td>
<td>question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chips</td>
<td>rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trips</td>
<td>which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what's</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Which child put chalk on the teacher’s chair?”

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>beginning</th>
<th>middle</th>
<th>end</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ʃ/</td>
<td>SH (shoe), S (sugar)</td>
<td>SH (finish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/dʒ/</td>
<td>J (jaw), G (general)</td>
<td>G (page), J (major)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tʃ/</td>
<td>CH (chair)</td>
<td>CH (teacher), T (future)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

English Pronunciation in Use
Exercises

12.1 Write these nationality words in the correct column.
Belgian Welsh Dutch Russian Chinese German Japanese Polish French Chilean Turkish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>contains /dʒ/</th>
<th>contains /ʃ/</th>
<th>contains /tʃ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Belgian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.2 Complete this conversation using words from the box. Then listen and check.

SID: It’s fish and __________ for lunch, Joe!
JOE: ___________!? I can’t eat __________, they’re too big!
SID: I said ___________ you know, fried potatoes!
JOE: Oh, I see, ___________ with a CH, not ___________ with an SH.
SID: That’s right. You’re a genius, Joe!
JOE: Was the fish expensive, Sid?
SID: No, it was ____________.
JOE: ___________!? You bought a ____________?
SID: No, ____________ the opposite of expensive.
JOE: Oh, I see, ___________ with a CH, not ___________ with a J!

Follow up: Play the recording again, pausing it after each of Sid’s lines. You say Joe’s lines before listening to him saying them.

12.3 If a word ends with a /dʒ/ or a /tʃ/, and the next word begins with the same sound, you say the sound twice. If you say Dutch cheese with only one /tʃ/, it sounds like Dutch ease. The speaker made this mistake in these sentences. Write what they meant to say.

EXAMPLE Does she tea Chinese in the school? __________ teach Chinese

1 I don’t know which air to sit on. __________________________
2 Everyone at the match earns when their team scores. __________________________
3 I never what chat shows on the TV. __________________________
4 The actor on stay joked with the audience. __________________________
5 Foxes sometimes come to the farm and cat chickens. __________________________
6 Do you want to chain jackets before we go out? __________________________

Follow up: You will hear both the incorrect and correct pairs of words from the exercise. Repeat, making the difference clear.

12.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Watch or wash? You’ll have to watch / wash the baby. __________________________ (⇒sound pair 44)
2 Riches or ridges? You’ll find riches / ridges like you’ve never seen! __________________________ (⇒sound pair 45)
3 Save or shave? He didn’t save / shave at all last year. __________________________ (⇒sound pair 32)
4 Use or juice? What’s the use / juice? __________________________ (⇒sound pair 42)
5 What’s or watch? What’s / Watch the time! / ? __________________________ (⇒sound pair 46)
6 Trees or cheese? I saw something in the trees / cheese! __________________________ (⇒sound pair 47)
13 Flies, fries

The consonant sounds /l/ and /r/

A

- Listen to the sound /l/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound. Notice that you can make it into a long continuous sound, and there is voice from the throat.

- Listen to the target sound /l/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Fries</th>
<th>Flies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rent</td>
<td>Lent</td>
<td>Rent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correct</td>
<td>Collect</td>
<td>Correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Cold</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

- Leave
- Life
- Slow
- Caller
- Help
- Fill
- Final
- Whistle

B

- Listen to the sound /r/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound. Notice that you can make it into a long continuous sound, and there is voice from the throat. But when you finish the sound, the jaw opens a little and the tongue goes straight again.

- Listen to the target sound /r/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Late</th>
<th>Rate</th>
<th>Late</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>Pray</td>
<td>Play</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chain</td>
<td>Train</td>
<td>Chain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaw</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>Jaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

- Right
- Wrote
- Rhyme
- Carrot
- Sorry
- Dress
- Far
- Away
- War
- And
- Peace

In South East English and many other accents, you only pronounce /r/ if there is a vowel sound after it. So for example, in far /faː/ and car /kaː/, you do not hear it, but in far away /faːər/ and car engine /kaːrˈɪndʒən/, you pronounce it because it is followed by a vowel sound. In other accents, including American, the /r/ is pronounced.

Note: The sound /r/ affects the vowel sound before it: see Units 14 and 19.

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequently</th>
<th>Sometimes</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>L (leg), LL (call)</td>
<td>L can be silent (half, calm, talk, could).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/r/</td>
<td>R (run), RR (carrot)</td>
<td>WR (wrong), RH (rhyme).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

13.1 Add the sound /l/ or /r/ to the beginning of these words and write the new words. Remember: think of sounds, not spelling. For example, if you add /l/ to the beginning of ache /ətʃ/, you get lake /leɪk/. The sound is similar but the spelling is completely different. There may be more than one possibility. Then say the pairs of words.

**EXAMPLE**

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ache</td>
<td>lake</td>
<td></td>
<td>eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rake</td>
<td>3 air</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>4 earn</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>owes</td>
<td>5 end</td>
<td>7 egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8 each</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.2 Think of a computer which people speak into and it writes what they say. Here, the person speaking didn’t make the difference clear between R and L. The underlined words are wrong. Correct them.

```
late
```

I worked rate that day and I didn’t alive home until 10 o’clock. I was very wet because of the lane. Then, to my supplies, my key didn’t fit in the rock. So I looked closely at my keys and saw that they were the long ones. I had left my house keys at work. So I got back on my motorbike and load back to the office to correct them. I got home really tired, so I went to bed, led for half an hour, switched off the right and went to sleep.

Follow up: Listen to the correct text. Then read it out yourself, making sure that you pronounce the corrected words clearly. Record yourself if you can.

13.3 Circle the word in which the letters L or R are silent. (Imagine the accent is from South East England, so the R is silent if there is no vowel sound after it.)

**EXAMPLE**

cold (calm) collect film

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>correct</td>
<td>curry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>follow</td>
<td>fold</td>
<td>folk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>hurry</td>
<td>hairy</td>
<td>hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>artist</td>
<td>arrow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Surprise or supplies? The surprise / supplies came later.
2 Collect or correct? I’ll correct / collect it tomorrow.
3 Flight or fright? We had a great flight / fright.
4 Trees or cheese? I saw something in the trees / cheese!
5 Jaw or drawer? She broke her lower jaw / drawer.

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 13.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Car, care
The vowel sounds /ɑː(r)/ and /eə(r)/

In many accents in England, the letter R is not pronounced after a vowel. In other places, the R is pronounced, for example in most parts of North America. But in both cases, the letter R makes the vowel before it sound different. If the vowel is A, we usually get the vowel sounds in car /ɑː/ or care /eə/.

- Listen to the sound /ɑː/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ɑː/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

**Note:** Sometimes we get the sound /ɑː/ before L too.

**Examples**
calm  card  cart
star  starve  start
harm  halve  half

"It's hard to park a car in a dark car park."

**Important for listening**

- Listen to the sound with R pronounced, as in North America:
  far  bar  heart  march  card  star  start  charm  chart
- In South East England, the letter A followed by S, F, TH, N is often pronounced /ɑː/:
  ask  fast  after  path  bath  dance  aunt
- In North America, the single letter O is pronounced /ɑː/:
  God, strong, lock, top. (See Unit 16)

**B**

- Listen to the sound /eə/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound.
- Listen to the target sound /eə/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

**Examples**
square  squares
where  where's
fair  fairly

"Sarah and Mary share their pears fairly."

**Important for listening**

**Spelling**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ɑː/</td>
<td>/eə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AR (car)</td>
<td>ERE (where)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL (half)</td>
<td>A (ask, path, aunt): South East English accent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/eə/</td>
<td>ERE (where)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

14.1 Make words with these beginnings and endings and write them in the correct part of the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>beginnings</th>
<th>ba</th>
<th>fa</th>
<th>ra</th>
<th>da</th>
<th>sta</th>
<th>squa</th>
<th>ca</th>
<th>ha</th>
<th>cha</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>endings</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>lf</td>
<td>ir</td>
<td>rd</td>
<td>rt</td>
<td>lm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>words with the vowel /α:/</th>
<th>words with the vowel /ea/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>bare</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2 Complete this conversation using the words in the box. Then listen and check.

SID: This is a great life, with no worries or _______ cares _______.
JOE: It would be nice if we had ___________ though, Sid.
SID: I didn’t say ___________, I said ___________!
JOE: Oh, I see. Not ___________, as in traffic, but ___________ with an ES at the end!
SID: That’s right. I’ve always loved sleeping under the ___________.
JOE: But why? There’s hardly any space under the ___________!
SID: No, not ___________, ___________. You know, little lights in the sky.
JOE: Oh, ___________! I thought you said ___________, that people walk up!

Follow up: Play the recording again, pausing the recording after each of Sid’s lines. You say Joe’s lines before listening to him saying them.

14.3 Listen to these sentences. Is the accent from North America (they pronounce the R after the vowel) or South East England? Write Am or Eng.

EXAMPLE He asked her to dance. _______Eng________

1 We started in March. ___________ 5 It stops and starts. ___________
2 It’s a fast car. ___________ 6 A glass of beer. ___________
3 My heart’s strong. ___________ 7 Was his hair dark or fair? ___________
4 Where’s the bar? ___________

14.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Heart or hat? She put her hand on her heart / hat. (→sound pair 3)
2 Nowhere or no way? There’s nowhere / no way to go. (→sound pair 5)
3 Fair or far? It isn’t fair / far. (→sound pair 6)
4 Part or port? This is the main part / port of Athens. (→sound pair 7)
5 Bear or beer? That’s a strong bear / beer. (→sound pair 8)
6 Come or calm? She told me to come / calm down. (→sound pair 9)

Now go to Unit 34
Some, sun, sung
The consonant sounds /m/, /n/ and /ŋ/

The consonant sounds /m/, /n/ and /ŋ/ are made by stopping the flow of air out of the mouth so that it goes through the nose instead. The three sounds are different because the air is stopped by different parts of the mouth. You can feel this when you say the words some, sun, sung.

- Listen to the sound /m/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound.

Note: Always close your lips for /m/, even at the end of a word when the next word begins with /k/ or /g/, for example: cream cake; warm glow.

- Listen to the target sound /m/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

Examples
miss  more  make
smoke  jump  harmed
comb  autumn  film

"Mum made me move my models."

- Listen to the sound /n/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound.

- Listen to the target sound /n/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

Examples
now  new  know
snow  dinner  against
gone  open  listen

"There was no one on the moon on the ninth of June."

- Listen to the sound /ŋ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this sound.

Note: Open your mouth but breathe through your nose. If you do this you will find that the air is stopped at the back of the mouth. This is where you stop the air to make the sound /ŋ/.

- Listen to the target sound /ŋ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

Examples
sing  singer  sink
bang  bank  banks
thing  think  finger

"Young King Kong was stronger than strong."

Notes on spelling: There may be a silent B or N after /m/ (comb, autumn). There may be a silent K before /n/ (knife). /ŋ/ changes to /ŋ/ when the next sound after it is /k/ or /g/; the N in thin is /ŋ/, but the N in think is /ŋ/.

English Pronunciation in Use
Exercises

15.1 Read this conversation. It contains 19 examples of the sound /m/. How many examples of the sounds /n/ and /ŋ/ does it contain? Write your answers. Then listen and check.

I met a man near the monument this morning. He was a singer and he sang a song for me. I'll always remember that magical moment. Like something out of a dream!

What, is that the moment, the monument or the man you meant?

15.2 Find a way from Start to Finish. You may pass a square only if the word in it has the sound /ŋ/. You can move horizontally (↔) or vertically (↑) only.

```
START

sing  think  thick  strong  wrong  rung

sign  uncle  unless  drug  strange  comb

thanks  angry  signal  drank  English  finger

anxious  angel  single  monkey  money  young

language  tongue  skiing  skin  came  ink

lounge  danger  band  dream  swim  wing

FINISH
```

15.3 Complete this conversation using words from the box. Then listen and check.

SID: Hey, Joe, your coat is very worn.

JOE: No, it isn't __________. I always feel cold in this coat.

SID: No, not __________! I said __________, with an N!

JOE: Oh, __________ with an N!

SID: Yes, the cloth is __________.

JOE: What do you mean “the cloth is __________”?

SID: No, __________ with an N at the end, not __________ with a G at the end!

15.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Robin or robbing? My friend likes Robin Banks / robbing banks. (§ sound pair 48)
2 Ran or rang? Tom ran / rang yesterday. (§ sound pair 48)
3 Swing or swim? She had a swing / swim in the garden. (§ sound pair 49)
4 Warned or warned? The son warned / sun warmed me. (§ sound pair 49)
5 Singing or sinking? The people were singing / sinking fast. (§ sound pair 48)

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 15.4, choosing one of the two words or expressions. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?

Now go to Unit 35

English Pronunciation in Use

39
Note, not
The vowel sounds /ɔʊ/ and /ə/ 

When you say the letters of the alphabet, O has the long vowel sound /ɔʊ/. You hear this sound in the word note. But the letter O is also pronounced as the short vowel sound /ə/, as in the word not.

- Listen to the sound /ɔʊ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ɔʊ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mouth relaxed</th>
<th>tongue up from relaxed position</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>move lips to round shape</td>
<td>move jaw up (a little)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bought</th>
<th>boat</th>
<th>boot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blouse</td>
<td>blows</td>
<td>blues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>coast</td>
<td>cast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ball</td>
<td>bowl</td>
<td>bull</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

toe toes toast
comb code coat
roll rose rope

"Rose knows Joe phones Sophie, but Sophie and Joe don’t know Rose knows."

- Listen to the sound /ə/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this short vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ə/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lips rounded</th>
<th>front of tongue down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lips forward</td>
<td>jaw down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>won’t</th>
<th>want</th>
<th>went</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>luck</td>
<td>lock</td>
<td>lack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>goat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fund</td>
<td>fond</td>
<td>phoned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

wrong rob rock
gone God got
doll dog dock

"John wants to watch Walter wash the dog."

In North America, the sound /ʊ/ is replaced by /ʌ/. For this reason, the following words may sound similar if an English speaker says the first word and an American speaker says the second word:

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ɔʊ/</td>
<td>O (old), O-E (stone)</td>
<td>If there is an R after the letter O (and the R does not have a vowel after it), O has a different pronunciation. (See Unit 19.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OW (show), OA (coat)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OE (toe)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ə/</td>
<td>O (dog)</td>
<td>A (wash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.1 Find 14 words in the puzzle (every letter is used once) and write them in the correct part of the table. The words are written horizontally (→) or vertically (↓).

| c s h o p r w | words with /ɔʊ/ |
| o s o n g o h |
| l r s w s c a |
| d o h a n k t |
| b a o n o r w |
| o d w t w o a |
| t j o k e l s |
| h c o a t l h |

| words with /oʊ/ |
| cold |

16.2 Read the words and circle the one with the different vowel sound. Then listen and check.

**EXAMPLE** soap hope sold (soup)

1 come gone long want
2 what hot most salt
3 drove love woke hole
4 snow low cow show
5 both cloth clothes road
6 word wash boss cost
7 post lost coast rose

16.3 Listen. You will hear the sentences twice, once in American English (A), once in British English (B). Write the order A–B or B–A.

**EXAMPLE** The coffee's hot. A-B

1 The lock's at the top.
2 The song's long.
3 Stop the clock.
4 The dog's gone.
5 He's often wrong.

16.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Cost or coast? What's the cost / coast like?
2 Shot or shut? They shot / shut the door.
3 Boat or boot? There's water in my boat / boot.
4 Woke or walk? I woke / walk the dog.
5 Phoned or found? Tim phoned / found her.

(=sound pair 14)
(=sound pair 15)
(=sound pair 16)
(=sound pair 17)
(=sound pair 18)

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 16.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Arthur's mother
The consonant sounds /θ/ and /ð/

- Listen to the two sounds /θ/ and /ð/. Notice that in /θ/, there is no voice from the throat. Instead, you can feel the air from your mouth on your hand. In the sound /ð/ there is voice from the throat. It is possible to make both sounds long. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make these consonant sounds.

- Now listen to the sound /θ/ on its own.

- Listen to the target sound /θ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{target } /θ/ & \\
\text{sick} & \text{thick} & \text{sick} \\
\text{boat} & \text{both} & \text{boat} \\
\text{free} & \text{three} & \text{free}
\end{array}
\]

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{thank} & \text{think} & \text{thought} \\
\text{healthy} & \text{birthday} & \text{maths} \\
\text{earth} & \text{length} & \text{fourth}
\end{array}
\]

- Listen to the sound /ð/ on its own.

- Listen to the target sound /ð/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{target } /ð/ & \\
\text{breed} & \text{breathe} & \text{breed} \\
\text{den} & \text{then} & \text{den} \\
\text{van} & \text{than} & \text{van}
\end{array}
\]

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{these} & \text{though} & \text{they} \\
\text{other} & \text{weather} & \text{clothes} \\
\text{breathe} & \text{with} & \text{sunbathe}
\end{array}
\]

- Many native speakers of English pronounce TH as /θ, ʌ/ or /s/ instead of /θ/, and /ð, ʌ/ or /z/ instead of /ð/. For example, some Irish speakers pronounce thick /tθɪk/ as tick /tɪk/.
- Some London speakers pronounce three /θriː/ as free /frɪː/. Some Nigerian speakers pronounce then /ðɛn/ as den /dɛn/.

**Spelling**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/θ/</th>
<th>always</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/θ/</td>
<td>TH (three)</td>
<td>In a few names of places and people, TH is pronounced as /θ/ (Thailand, Thomas).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ð/</td>
<td>TH (then)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Martha Smith's an author and an athlete."

"My father and mother live together with my other brother."

**Important for listening**
Exercises

17.1 Find a way from Start to Finish. You may pass a square only if the word in it has the sound /θ/.
You can move horizontally (↔) or vertically (↓) only.

```
  START
north  northern  either  weather  breathe  those
south  bath  bathe  thought  breath  youth
southern  third  their  through  though  thumb
Thailand  cloth  path  fifth  with  worth
month  clothes  these  brother  that  teeth
throw  thing  author  other  they  wealth
FINISH
```

17.2 Complete this rhyme using words from the box. Then listen and check.

Arthur had a ________________ brother.
And he didn’t want ________________ another.
And of the brothers, ________________
Wanted sisters ________________.
The last thing on this ________________

They wanted was a ________________.
So Arthur’s mother ________________
Got them both ________________
And told them all good ________________.
Should learn to share their ________________

Follow up: Listen to the poem again. Pause the recording after each line and repeat it.

17.3 Think of a computer which people speak into and it writes what they say. This computer wrote these sentences down wrongly. Correct the underlined mistakes.

**EXAMPLE**  It’s free o’clock. ________________

1 A hat is more relaxing than a shower. ________________
2 The train went ________________ the tunnel.
3 Don’t walk on the ice; it’s very ________________
4 You need a sick coat in winter. ________________
5 I don’t know; I haven’t fought about it. ________________
6 It’s a matter of life and ________________

17.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Youth or use? There’s no youth / use talking about that. ________________
2 Thought or taught? I don’t know what she thought / taught. ________________
3 Free or three? Free / Three refills with each packet! ________________
4 Closed or clothed? They weren’t fully closed / clothed. ________________
5 Breeding or breathing? They’ve stopped breeding / breathing. ________________
6 These are or visa? These are / Visa problems we can deal with later. ________________

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 17.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?

Now go to Unit 37

English Pronunciation in Use 43
Sun, full, June
The vowel sounds /ʌ/, /ʊ/ and /uː/

When you say the letters of the alphabet, U has the long vowel sound /uː/ (we say it with the consonant /j/ in front of it). You hear the /uː/ sound in the word June. But the letter U is also pronounced as the short vowel sounds /ʌ/ or /ʊ/, as in the words sun and full.

- Listen to the sound /ʌ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this short vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ʌ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examples</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;My mother’s brother’s my uncle; my uncle’s son’s my cousin.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the North of England, speakers may use /ʊ/ in place of /ʌ/, so luck /ʌk/ sounds like look /lʊk/.

- Listen to the sound /ʊ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this short vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ʊ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examples</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>full</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>wolf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;That cook couldn’t cook if he didn’t look at a cook book.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen to the sound /uː/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /uː/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.
- Then listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examples</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shoe</td>
<td>shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Sue knew too few new tunes on the flute.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many words which have /j/ before /uː/ in British English don’t in American English. Compare: news /njuːz/ - news /nuːz/, tune /tjuːn/ - tune /tjuːn/.

Notes on spelling: If there is an R after the letter U (and the R does not have a vowel after it), U has a different pronunciation. (See Unit 19.)
Exercises

18.1

Listen to this student. Do the underlined words have an /ʌ/ or /ʊ:/ sound? Write them in the correct part of the table.

I studied English at a school in London last summer. I was there for two months: May and June. England is famous for bad food and weather, but I thought the food was good. The pub lunches were very nice. But it's true about the weather. Too much rain for me!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/ʌ/</th>
<th>/ʊ:/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Studied</td>
<td>School</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Follow up: Listen again and repeat sentence by sentence.

18.2

Complete these sentences with words from the box. The vowel sound is given. Listen, check and repeat.

brother wood moon juice won month June

would full boot Cup put son good

EXAMPLE
Two things you can put /ʊ/ on a foot are a shoe and a boot /ʊ:/.

1 The /ʌ/ after /ʊ:/ is July.
2 My mother's other /ʌ/ is my /ʌ/.
3 Brazil /ʌ/ the World /ʌ/ in 2002.
4 Fruit /ʊ:/ is /ʊ/ for you.
5 There is a /ʊ/ /ʊ:/ once a month.
6 You pronounce /ʊ/ exactly the same as /ʊ/.

18.3

Circle the word with the different vowel sound. You can use a dictionary if you are not sure.

EXAMPLE foot look blood push 4 pull full put rule
1 soon book boot room 5 group could would should
2 rude luck run but 6 done move love son
3 shoes does true blue 7 south young couple won

18.4

Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Cut or cat? There's a cut /cat/ on the arm of the sofa.
2 Come or calm? You should try to come /calm/ down.
3 Gun or gone? He's taken his dog and gun /gone/.
4 Shoes or shows? I've never seen her shoes /shows/ on TV.
5 Pool or pull? It said 'pool' / 'pull' on the door.
6 Luck or look? It's just her luck /look/!
7 Shirt or shut? The hairdresser's shirt /shut/.
8 A gun or again? He shot a gun /again/.

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 18.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which word you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?

Now go to Unit 38
Shirt, short

The vowel sounds /ɜː(r)/ and /ɔː(r)/

In many accents in England, the letter R is not pronounced after a vowel. In other places, the R is pronounced, for example in North America. But in both cases, the letter R changes the vowel sound before it. If the vowel letter is E, I, O or U, we often get the vowel sounds in shirt or short.

- Listen to the sound /ɜː/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ɜː/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

![Mouth diagram showing relaxed position](https://example.com/mouth-diagram.png)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /ɜː/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target language.
  were word worst
  burn bird birth
  her heard hurt

"The girl heard the nurse work."

- Listen to the sound /ɔː/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ɔː/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

![Mouth diagram showing rounded position](https://example.com/mouth-diagram.png)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /ɔː/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat the examples of the target sound.
  bore bored bought
  call cause caught
  war wall walk

"Laura's daughter bought a horse and called it Laura."

- Listen to the following words with the R pronounced, as in North America:
  shirt were heard worst birth hurt born short door four war more
- In words without R, some American speakers pronounce the sound /ɔː/ instead of /ɜː/.
  Listen: ball caught law talk bought.

### Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 / E / O / U + R</th>
<th>other spellings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ɜː/</td>
<td>IR (girl), ER (her), UR (hurt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔː/</td>
<td>OR (word), EAR (heard)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A (call), AR (war), AU (cause), AW (saw), AL (walk), AUGH (taught), OUGH (thought), OUR (four)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

19.1 Write these numbers out in full. Which of the two vowel sounds do they contain? Write /əː/ or /ɜː/.

**EXAMPLE** 3rd  ____________ /ɜː/: |

1 1/4____________________ 4 1st __________________
2 30______________________ 5 14 __________________
3 4th ____________________

19.2 Find 14 words in the puzzle (every letter is used once) and write them in the correct part of the table. The words are written horizontally (→) or vertically (↑).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b b t c o u r s e</th>
<th>words with /ɜː/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i a u h w s w a r</td>
<td>bird</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r l r e o o h g m</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d l n a r r e i o</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s a w r d t r r r</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l a w d a l l e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>words with /əː/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19.3 Listen to these sentences. Is the accent from Britain or America? Write B or A.

**EXAMPLE** The girl’s first birthday. ...A.

1 It’s hard work, of course. ...
2 Are you sure? ...
3 Law and order. ...
4 I walk to work. ...
5 I saw the bird fall. ...
6 He was born on Thursday the thirty-first. ...
7 She taught German. ...
8 I learned to surf in Brazil. ...
9 ‘Caught’ and ‘court’ sound the same in my accent. ...

19.4 Listen and circle the word you hear. If you find any of these difficult, go to Section D4 Sound pairs for further practice.

1 Four or far? It isn’t *four* /far.*  (⇒ sound pair 7)
2 Worst or west? It’s on the *worst* /west* coast.*  (⇒ sound pair 12)
3 Walk or woke? I *walk* /woked* the dog.*  (⇒ sound pair 17)
4 Shut or shirt? The butcher’s *shut* /shirt.*  (⇒ sound pair 21)
5 Port or pot? There’s coffee in the *port* /pot*.
6 Bird or beard? He has a black *bird* /beard.* (⇒ sound pair 23)
7 Her or hair? Is that *her* /hair?  (⇒ sound pair 24)
8 Worked or walked? We *worked* /walked* all day.* (⇒ sound pair 25)

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 19.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?

Now go to Unit 39

*English Pronunciation in Use*
Toy, town
The vowel sounds /ɔɪ/ and /au/  

- Listen to the sound /ɔɪ/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /ɔɪ/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

```
lips rounded
make lips wide
make lips start forward and move back
jaw starts down and moves up
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /ɔɪ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.
  toy   noise   voice
  boil  coin   choice
  employ enjoyed

```
A96a
```

- Listen to the sound /au/. Look at the mouth diagram to see how to make this long vowel sound.
- Listen to the target sound /au/ in the words below and compare it with the words on each side.

```
lips rounded
move lips forward
make back of tongue starts down and moves up
jaw starts down and moves up
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>target /au/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phoned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Listen and repeat these examples of the target sound.
  how   houses   house
  now   sound   south
  town  ground  count

```
A96c
```

- When the vowel sound /ɔɪ/ is before L, e.g. oil, boil, soil, many speakers put the vowel /ə/ between them. You may find it easier to say it this way.
- When the vowel sound /au/ is before R or L, many speakers put the vowel /ə/ between them, so hour rhymes with shower, and foul rhymes with towel.
- Listen to these words with the R pronounced, as in North America: hour, power, shower, flour, flower, tower

```
A97
```

Spelling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>frequently</th>
<th>notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ɔɪ/</td>
<td>OY(boy), OI (coin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/au/</td>
<td>OW (cow), OU (loud)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Various different vowel sounds are spelt OW or OU.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

20.1 Put one of the letters y, i, u or w in each gap to make a word. The word must contain the sound /ɔɪ/ or /au/. Write /ɔɪ/ or /au/ after each word.

**Example**

to_n _town /au/.

1 bo_s  
2 no_se  
3 fo_nd  
4 po_nt  
5 ho_  
6 bo_l  
7 ho_r  
8 flo_er  
9 enjo_

20.2 Listen to this text. Find words from it which have an /ɔɪ/ or /au/ sound and write them in the correct part of the table.

I enjoy living down town. Well, it's very noisy, of course. The traffic is loud, and the young people often shout when they come out of the clubs. But there are lots of good points too. There's a big choice of shops, and it's easy to get around.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/ɔɪ/ (4 words)</th>
<th>/au/ (6 words)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Follow up:** Listen again and repeat, sentence by sentence.

20.3 Find a way from Start to Finish. You may pass a square only if the word in it has the sound /au/.

You can move horizontally (↔) or vertically (↑) only.

```
START

house sound group about mouth cow
soup out brown mouse bought south
could couple grow low would cloud
know snow touch ought down count
thought should slow blow pound young
soul country though throw town round

FINISH
```

20.4 Listen and circle the words you hear.

1 Tie or toy? He got a tie / toy for his birthday.
2 Goodbye or Good boy? ‘Goodbye!’ / ‘Good boy!’ she said.
3 Phoned or found? She phoned / found a friend.
4 Tone or town? What an ugly tone / town!

**Follow up:** Record yourself saying the sentences in 20.4, choosing one of the two words. Make a note of which words you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?

Now go to Unit 40
Eye, my, mine
Introducing syllables

We can divide a word into one or more syllables. For example *mum* has one syllable, *mother* has two syllables and *grandmother* has three syllables. A syllable is a group of one or more sounds. The essential part of a syllable is a vowel sound (V). Some syllables are just one vowel sound. For example, these words have one syllable, and the syllable is just one vowel sound: *eye /aɪ/*, *owe /au/*.

A syllable can have consonant sounds (C) before the V, after the V or before *and* after the V. Here are some more examples (they are all words of one syllable).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CV</th>
<th>VC</th>
<th>CVC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go /ɡoʊ/</td>
<td>if /ɪf/</td>
<td>ten /tɛn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my /maɪ/</td>
<td>egg /ɛɡ/</td>
<td>nose /nəʊz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know /nəʊ/</td>
<td>ice /aɪs/</td>
<td>mouth /maʊθ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weigh /weɪ/</td>
<td>eight /eɪt/</td>
<td>knife /naɪf/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Note: There may be *more* than one C before or after the V. (See Units 24, 25.)

Remember that letters are *not* the same as sounds. For example, the consonant *letters* W and Y are not consonant *sounds* if they come after the vowel sound in the syllable e.g. *saw*, *say*. They are part of the vowel sound. In some accents, for example South East English, the same is true for the consonant letter R. Here are some more examples. They are words of one syllable and they all have the pattern CV.

*how /həʊ/*, *law /lɔ/*, *pay /peɪ/*, *why /waɪ/*, *car /kær/*, *hair /heər/*

Some people use the word *syllable* to talk about the parts of a written word. But in this book, the word *syllable* is used to talk about the *pronunciation* of words, not the writing. For example, in writing we can divide ‘chocolate’ into three parts like this: cho-co-late. But when we say the word, we pronounce only two syllables, like this: chocolate /ˈʃɒk.ələt/. (The dot shows where the two syllables are divided.) A number of other words may be pronounced with fewer syllables than in writing. Listen to these examples.

*chocolate /ˈʃɒk.ələt/*, *different /ˈdɪf.ər.ənt/*, *interesting /ɪ.ntrə.stɪŋ/*,
*general /ˈdʒen.ərl/*, *comfortable /ˈkʌmfortə.bəl/*, *secretary /sɪˈɛk.rə.təri/*

The first syllable in these words has the same three sounds, but in the opposite order:
*kitchen /ˈkɪtʃən/ – chicken /ˈtʃɪk.ən/.*

If a sentence has similar-sounding syllables like this in it, it may be difficult to say. These sentences are called ‘tongue-twisters’. Listen to this example.

*Richard checked the chicken in the kitchen.*

⚠️ Note: You can find more about syllables in Units 24 to 27.
Exercises

21.1 Write these words in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aunt</th>
<th>cook</th>
<th>dad</th>
<th>doctor</th>
<th>grandfather</th>
<th>officer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>passenger</td>
<td>sister</td>
<td>teacher</td>
<td>uncle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 syllable</th>
<th>2 syllables</th>
<th>3 syllables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.2 Look at these one-syllable words. Write C where there is a consonant sound. There may be one before V, after V or in both places.

**EXAMPLES**
- high c _ V
- rice c _ V c
- 1 bought _ V
- 2 eyes _ V
- 3 key _ V
- 4 day _ V
- 5 through _ V
- 6 laugh _ V
- 7 two _ V
- 8 youth _ V
- 9 weigh _ V
- 10 rhyme _ V

21.3 The spelling changes if you change the order of sounds in these one-syllable words from CV to VC. Write the missing words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CV</th>
<th>VC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>/ləʊ/ =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/ɔːl/ =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 /dɪə/</td>
<td>law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 /nəʊ/</td>
<td>/aid/ =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/əʊn/ =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 /piː/</td>
<td>/əp/ =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/tə/ =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 /tɪə/</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/mɔɪ/ =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 /miː/</td>
<td>may</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/eɪs/ =</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 /seɪ/</td>
<td>ace</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.4 Read the text aloud. Record your voice if you can. Then listen to the recording. Did you say the same number of syllables in the underlined words as on the recording?

I went to an interesting restaurant on Wednesday. First I had chicken with a lot of different vegetables. Then I had a piece of chocolate cake. In general, I don’t like chocolate, but the cake was lovely.

21.5 Listen to these tongue-twisters. How many syllables are there in each? Write the number. Then listen again and repeat.

**EXAMPLE** She sells sea shells on the sea shore. = 8 syllables

1 Walter walked towards the waiter. = 
2 Betty bought a better bit of butter. = 
3 The fat cat sat on the vet’s wet hat. = 

Now go to Unit 41
Saturday September 13th
Introducing word stress

If a word has more than one syllable, you give stress to one of the syllables. To give it stress, do one or more of these to the syllable:

- Make it longer. **Saturday**
- Make it louder. **Sat ur day**
- Make it higher. **Sat ur day**

We can show stress with circles: each circle is a syllable and the bigger circle shows which syllable has the stress. For example, Saturday is Ooo.

Listen to the conversation and listen to the stress patterns of the words in bold type.

A: When do you begin your holiday?  
   o O O o o 
B: On the thirtieth of August.  
   O o o O o 
A: That’s next Saturday!  
   O o o 
B: We’re leaving in the afternoon.  
   o o O 
A: And when are you coming back?
B: Saturday September the thirteenth.  
   o O o o O o 
A: Thirtieth?  
   O o o 
B: No, thirteenth!  
   o O

Different words have different stress patterns (patterns of stressed and unstressed syllables). Listen to these two- and three-syllable words.

Oo April, thirty, morning, Sunday  
Oo July, midday, thirteen, today, thirteenth  
Ooo Saturday, thirtieth, yesterday, holiday, seventy  

⚠️ Note: The stress pattern of numbers with -teen is sometimes different when the word is in a sentence. For example, the normal stress pattern of nineteen is oO, but when it is followed by a noun, e.g. the nineteen nineties, nineteen people, the pattern is Oo.

⚠️ Note: January and February may be pronounced with the stress patterns Ooo or Oooo.

Stress patterns can help you hear the difference between similar words, for example, numbers ending in -teen or -ty. Listen to these examples.

Oo thirteen thirty  
Oo fourteen forty  
Oo sixteen sixty  
Oo eighteen eighty  
Oo nineteen ninety  

⚠️ Note: You can find more about word stress in Units 28 to 31.
Exercises

22.1 Write the full words in the correct column, according to their stress pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mon</th>
<th>Tues</th>
<th>Thu</th>
<th>Sat</th>
<th>today</th>
<th>tomorrow</th>
<th>Apr</th>
<th>Jul</th>
<th>Aug</th>
<th>Sept</th>
<th>Oct</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nov</td>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>11th</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>13th</td>
<td>30th</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oo</th>
<th>oO</th>
<th>Ooo</th>
<th>oOo</th>
<th>ooO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22.2 Write one word from 22.1 in each sentence below. The word must have the stress pattern shown. Then say the sentences.

1 I'm going to have a party on _____________________ (Ooo).
2 My grandfather is _____________________ (Ooo) years old.
3 I often sleep for an hour in the _____________________ (ooO).
4 My birthday is on the _____________________ (oOo) of March.
5 In Europe, the weather is warm in _____________________ (oO).
6 I left school when I was _____________________ (ooO).
7 Goodnight. See you _____________________ (oOo).
8 How long is your summer _____________________ (Ooo)?

22.3 Find a way from Start to Finish. You may pass a square only if the word has the stress pattern Ooo. You can move horizontally (↔) or vertically (↕) only.

```
START
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eightieth</th>
<th>twentieth</th>
<th>thirtieth</th>
<th>September</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>twenty-one</td>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>sixtieth</td>
<td>seventy</td>
<td>eleventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second</td>
<td>fortieth</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>seventeen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation</td>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>ninetieth</td>
<td>fiftieth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

22.4 Listen and circle the number you hear.

1 100 dollars! It only cost 17 / 70 last year! 4 She was born in 1916 / 1960.
2 He was the 14th / 40th President of my country. 5 He was 13 / 30 on his last birthday.
3 The maximum number of people is 15 / 50. 6 She'll be 18 / 80 in March.

Now go to Unit 42
Remember, he told her
Introducing sentence stress

Individual words have a stress pattern, that is a pattern of strong and weak syllables. Sentences also have a stress pattern, and this is sentence stress. Sometimes a word and a sentence have the same stress pattern. Listen to these examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>sentence</th>
<th>word</th>
<th>sentence</th>
<th>word</th>
<th>sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>photograph</td>
<td>Answer me!</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>Excuse me.</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
<td>Do you smoke?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Doesn't he?</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>I think so.</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>One of these?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cabbages</td>
<td>Copy it!</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td>He told her.</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>He's arrived.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short sentences and phrases in English have some typical stress patterns. Listen to the examples.

Ooo What's the time? Yes, of course! Thanks a lot!
OooOo See you later! Pleased to meet you! Can't you hear me?
oOoOo A piece of cake. The shop was closed. It's time to go.
OOoOo What do you do? Where do you live? Give me a call.
ooOo Are you coming? Do you like it? Is he happy?

Note: For more examples, see Section D5: Sentence stress phrasebook.

There is normally a space between stressed syllables in a sentence. Unstressed syllables can be put in that space. The space stays more or less the same length whether one or more unstressed syllables are pushed into it. So for example, these three sentences take about the same length of time to say. Listen.

OOO Don't tell Mike.
OooOoO Go and speak to Mary.
OoooOoo Hurry and give it to Jonathan.

Stress patterns can help you hear the difference between similar sentences. For example, verbs with the negative ending -n't are always stressed. This helps us to hear the difference between can and can't in the following two sentences, because the two sentences have different stress patterns.

OoO He can talk.
oOO He can’t talk.

Note: You can find more about sentence stress in Units 32 to 40.
Exercises

23.1  Listen and underline the sentence which does not have the same stress pattern as the word at the beginning of the line.

EXAMPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ooo</th>
<th>cinema</th>
<th>Wasn't it?</th>
<th>Hasn't she?</th>
<th>Don't you?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 oOo</td>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>Close the door.</td>
<td>He told me.</td>
<td>I like it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ooO</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
<td>Does he drive?</td>
<td>Were you cold?</td>
<td>What happened?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 oOo</td>
<td>December</td>
<td>It's open.</td>
<td>They arrived.</td>
<td>They listened.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.2  Write these sentences in the correct column. Then listen, check and repeat.

The bus was late. Come and look. Close the window. What do you want?
The water's cold. Give me a call. What did she say? Phone and tell me.
Nice to see you. Where's the car? It's cold and wet. What's the time?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OooO</th>
<th>oOoO</th>
<th>0o0</th>
<th>OoOo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The bus was late.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.3  Combine phrases from the boxes A, B and C to make three sentences or phrases with these patterns:
OOO  OoOoOo  OooOooOoo. Then listen, check and repeat.

EXAMPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>OOO</th>
<th>OoOoOo</th>
<th>OooOooOooOoo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Half a</td>
<td>bottle of beer</td>
<td>beer</td>
<td>One cold beer:</td>
<td>Half a glass of water:</td>
<td>Give me a bottle of orange juice:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One</td>
<td>glass of cold</td>
<td>orange juice water</td>
<td>OoOoOo</td>
<td>OooOooOoo</td>
<td>OooOooOooOoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Give me a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.4  Listen and tick the sentence you hear, A or B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I can swim.</td>
<td>I can't swim.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Are you coming?</td>
<td>Aren't you coming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 We were tired.</td>
<td>We weren't tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 She can help you.</td>
<td>She can't help you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Can you see?</td>
<td>Can't you see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 They were talking.</td>
<td>They weren't talking.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now go to Unit 43

English Pronunciation in Use 55
Oh, no snow!
Consonants at the start of syllables

Some one-syllable words are just a single vowel sound (V), for example oh and eye. If we add one or more consonant sounds (C) to the beginnings of these words, they are still only one syllable. Look at these examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V</th>
<th>CV</th>
<th>CCV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>oh</td>
<td>/əʊ/</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oh</td>
<td>/əʊ/</td>
<td>low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>/aɪ/</td>
<td>lie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air</td>
<td>/eaɪ/</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>/ɔː/</td>
<td>law</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When there are two Cs at the start of a syllable:
- if the first C is /s/, the second C can be any of these: /l/, /l/, /l/, /ml/, /pl/, /w/, /w/, /j/.
- if the first C is any sound other than /s/, the second C can only be one of these: /l/, /l/, /w/, /w/.

When there are three Cs at the start of a syllable:
- the first C is always /s/.

You may find some of these syllables with more than one C at the beginning difficult to say. Listen to these examples.

/s/ + C: spell stairs sleep small snack swim
C + /l/, /l/, /l/ or /j/: blue fly dress ground quick swim view tune
/s/ + CC: spring strange square scream

When there are two or more Cs at the beginning of a syllable, many learners add a V before the first C or between the Cs. Be careful!
- If you add a V before the first C, you may get a different word. For example, if you add a vowel before sleep, it may become asleep.
- If you add a V between the Cs, you may get a different word. For example, if you add a vowel between /s/ and /p/ in sport, it becomes support.

Listen to the difference.

+ extra syllable
sleep asleep
dress address
street a street
sport support
That ski. That's a key.
That smile. That's a mile.
What snake? What's an ache?
Exercises

24.1 Add one C to the start of each word to make a new word in the pictures. Be careful: think of sounds, not spelling!

Example: red — bread (red /red/ + b = bread /bred/)

1 lie
2 lock
3 rain
4 key
5 lime
6 late
7 route

24.2 Add one of the sounds from the box after the consonant at the start of these words to make other words. Think of sounds, not spelling!

\[\begin{array}{cccc}
/k/ & /l/ & /r/ & /p/ & /t/ \\
\end{array}\]

Example: die — dry

1 back
2 fight
3 fat
4 go
5 pain
6 pay
7 two
8 say
9 sin
10 send

24.3 Listen and circle the word you hear.

1 The glass / gas is green.
2 I don't want to play / pay.
3 It was a terrible fight / fright!
4 The tooth / truth is out!
5 The dirt came off the steam / stream.
6 She didn't want to stay / say.
7 The pain / plane went down.
8 I can't sell / smell anything.

24.4 Listen and tick the sentence or phrase you hear, A or B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 that slow bus</td>
<td>That's a low bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 an ice-cream</td>
<td>a nicer cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 that spot</td>
<td>That's a pot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 that street</td>
<td>That's a treat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 She loves the States.</td>
<td>She loves the estates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 small stream</td>
<td>a smaller stream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 slow speech</td>
<td>a slower speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 straight street</td>
<td>a straighter street</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Follow up: Record yourself saying the phrases and sentences in 24.4, choosing A or B each time. Make a note of which sentence or phrase you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which you said?
Go – goal – gold
Consonants at the end of syllables

Some one-syllable words have no consonant sound (C) after the vowel sound (V), for example go. If we add one or more consonant sounds (C) to the end of these words, they are still only one syllable. Here is an example.

Sometimes, if you do not pronounce the last C of a word, you in fact say another word. For example, if you do not pronounce the final /k/ in think /θɪŋk/ you get thing /θiŋ/. Listen to the words below. The words on the left sound the same as the words on the right without the final C, so you can see that it is important to pronounce the final consonants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VCC</th>
<th>VC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>belt</td>
<td>bell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change</td>
<td>chain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>range</td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>hell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film</td>
<td>fill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenth</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learnt</td>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wolf</td>
<td>wool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>hole</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some learners of English find it difficult to pronounce two Cs together at the end of a syllable. If you have this problem, you may find it easier if you put a word beginning with a V after it and imagine that the last C of the first word is in fact the beginning of the second word. For example, if you find it difficult to say the /nt/ at the end of weren’t, imagine the /t/ at the start of the next word:

They weren’t able to do it. They weren’t → table to do it.

⚠ Note: We often get the consonant pair /nt/ at the end of negative contractions, e.g. isn’t. (See Unit 35.)

⚠ Note: There are often two or more Cs at the end of verbs in the past tense. For example walked is pronounced /wɔːkt/ so it has the pattern CVCC. Similarly with -es endings, likes is pronounced /laɪks/ (CVCC).

Some learners of English add a vowel after words ending in two Cs to make it easier to say. But be careful: if you add an extra V after the last C, you may get a different word.

Listen to these examples.

help       helper
sent       centre
cook       cooker
mix        mixer
past       pasta
25.1 Remove a consonant sound from the end of each word to make a new word. Be careful: think of sounds, not spelling! Look at the example. If you remove the last sound from went /went/, you get when /wen/.

Example went when

1 field _______________
2 change _______________
3 six _______________
4 build _______________
5 shelf _______________
6 wealth _______________
7 guest _______________
8 wild _______________

25.2 Read the conversation and underline the words which end with two consonant sounds.

A: OK, first question. What's the eighth month in the year?
B: It's August.
A: Correct! Second question. What's the highest mountain on Earth?
B: Mount Everest.
A: Correct again! Mount Everest! Next question.
Which city is furthest east in Europe: Athens, Brussels or Budapest?
B: Is it Budapest, or perhaps Brussels?
A: No, it isn't. It's Athens. OK, last question. What's the biggest land animal in the world?
B: The elephant.
A: Very good! Three out of four correct, that's seventy-five percent!

Now read the conversation aloud. Pronounce the underlined words carefully.

25.3 Think of a computer which people speak into and it writes what they say. This computer wrote these sentences down wrongly. The mistakes are underlined and one of the correct words is given at the end in (brackets). Write the correct sentences.

Example She dozen turn much. (earn) She doesn't earn much.

1 I thing cold cars are better. (think) ...................................................
2 The hang caught to be open by now. (ought) ..........................................
3 I thing call the time. (all) .................................................................
4 These big cars whole date people. (hold) ...........................................
5 Did he fill mother kinds of movies too? (other) .................................
6 Three people have sick size. (eyes) ....................................................
7 If you took aspirins, your head wooden take. (ache).........................

25.4 Listen and circle the word you hear.

1 They took their cook / cooker with them. 5 Is that your guess / guest?
2 She was a great help / helper! 6 They burn / burnt the food.
3 He did an / didn't exercise. 7 It's all in the past / pasta now.
4 They learn / learnt quickly. 8 That mix / mixer wasn't very good.
Paul's calls, Max's faxes
Syllables: plural and other -s endings

The noun call /kɔːl/ is one syllable and the plural calls /kɔːlz/ is also only one syllable. Usually the -s ending is just a consonant sound (C), not another syllable. It is pronounced /s/ or /z/.

When we add -s to make the third person singular present, it is the same. For example, the verb know /nəʊ/ is one syllable and the third person form knows /nəʊz/ is also only one syllable.

When we add -'s to make the possessive it is also the same. For example Paul and Paul's are both just one syllable.

Listen to the examples of -s endings in these rhymes.
Claire's chairs.
Bob's jobs.
Di's pies.
Rose knows.
Pat's hats.

Sometimes, plural, third person and possessive endings are another syllable. For example, fax /fæks/ is one syllable, but faxes /fæks.ziz/ is two syllables.

The plural and other endings are another syllable when the original word ends in one of the sounds below. Listen to the examples and rhymes.
/s/ Chris's kisses, the nurse’s purses, Max's faxes
/l/ Trish's wishes
/z/ Rose's roses
/tʃ/ The witch's watches
/dʒ/ George's fridges

Note: When the -s ending is another syllable, it is pronounced /iz/.

With -s endings, we sometimes get a lot of consonant sounds together at the end of syllables, for example, facts /fæktz/. Many speakers of English make it simpler and do not pronounce one of the Cs. For example, they may pronounce facts like fax /fæks/. Here are some more examples.

She never sends birthday cards. (sounds like: She never /senz/ birthday cards)
The lift is broken. (sounds like: The /lifz/ broken)
It tastes funny. (sounds like: It /tɛz/ funny)
That's what he expects. (sound like: That's what he /ikˈspeks/)

Try to make sure you pronounce the -s ending. It is very important to the meaning. Listen to the examples and notice how the -s ending changes the meaning.

noun
Jane's nose
Nick's weights

verb
Jane knows
Nick waits

singular
My friend spends a lot.
Our guest came late.

plural
My friends spend a lot.
Our guests came late.
Exercises

26.1 Match the beginnings and ends of these phrases so that they rhyme. Then listen and repeat.
1 Ms Fox’s
2 My niece’s
3 The witch’s
4 Mr Bridge’s
5 Mr Jones
6 Chris’s
7 Anne’s

   a fridges
   b boxes
   c pieces
   d phones
   e kisses
   f plans
   g switches

26.2 Write the third person forms of the verbs from the box in the correct part of the table below. Then listen, check and repeat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>watch</th>
<th>sing</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>dance</th>
<th>kiss</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>wash</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>close</th>
<th>push</th>
<th>pull</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 syllable</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>sings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 syllables</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.3 These speakers are not pronouncing all the consonants at the ends of some words. What are they saying? Write the sentence.

1 (sounds like: /hænz/ up)
2 (sounds like: There are many different /kæinz/ of whale)
3 (sounds like: My favourite /sæbdʒeks/ chemistry)
4 (sounds like: The /wɪnz/ very strong today)

26.4 Listen and circle the word you hear.
1 I saw the bird / birds fly away.
2 What time did the guest / guests leave?
3 He broke his arm / arms in the accident.
4 She sang the song / songs her father wrote.
5 Where does she park her car / cars at night?
6 I read the book / books very quickly.
7 The bag / bags fell on the floor.
8 The shop / shops will be closed.
9 When will the class / classes begin?
10 The box / boxes won’t be big enough.

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 26.4, choosing singular or plural. Make a note of which one you said. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which words you said?
Pete played, Rita rested
Syllables: adding past tense endings

The verb *play* /pleɪ/ has one syllable and the past tense *played* /pleɪt/ also has only one syllable. Usually the *-ed* ending is just a consonant sound (C), not another syllable; the letter E is silent.
So, for example, *smiled* /sməɪld/ rhymes with *child* /faɪld/, even though *child* does not have a letter E before the D. Listen to the rhymes. Notice that *-ed* rhymes with either /l/ or /d/.

He looked round first,
And then reversed.
The car that passed
Was going fast.
It hit the side.
The driver cried.
He never guessed.
He'd pass the test.

If the infinitive of the verb ends with the sounds /l/ or /d/, *-ed* or *-d* is a new syllable; the letter E is pronounced as a vowel sound. For example:
hate /het/ = one syllable
hated /hetɪd/ = two syllables

Listen and compare the sentences on the left and right below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pete</th>
<th>Rita</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>played.</td>
<td>rested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan danced.</td>
<td>Colin counted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will watched.</td>
<td>Wendy waited.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liz laughed.</td>
<td>Sheila shouted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clare cleaned.</td>
<td>Myra mended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steve stopped.</td>
<td>Stacey started.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past tense endings tell you if the sentence is present or past. Listen to the difference.

**Present**

You never cook a meal.
I sometimes watch a movie.
We often phone our parents.

**Past**

You never cooked a meal.
I sometimes watched a movie.
We often phoned our parents.

⚠️ **Note:** If it is difficult to say the *-ed* ending in words like *cooked*, imagine that the *-ed* is joined to the word after. For example say *cooked all the food* like this: *cook tall the food.*

⚠️ **Note:** If the word after the past tense verb begins with a consonant, you may not hear the *-ed*, e.g. *cooked dinner, walked through.*
27.1 Match the beginnings and ends of these rhymes.

1. The people queued a. was never found.
2. The thing you missed b. are on the board.
3. The man controlled c. and then she smiled.
4. She saw the child d. to build on sand.
5. The boat that crossed e. was on the list.
6. The man who drowned f. until she coughed.
7. The snow we rolled g. the nation’s gold.
8. Her voice was soft h. to buy the food.
9. The points we scored i. was nearly lost.
10. We never planned j. was hard and cold.

27.2 Write the past tense of the verbs from the box in the correct part of the table. Then listen, check and repeat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb 1 syllable</th>
<th>verb -ed = extra syllable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hate</td>
<td>walked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>hated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taste</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.3 Complete each sentence with the past tense of a verb from the box. In each sentence, the first sound of the verb is the same as the first sound in the person’s name! Then listen, check and repeat.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>play watch add phone count mix cook start shout paint</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 0 0 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Paul ____________ played _______ games.                | Peter ____________ painted _______ pictures.       |
| Ken ____________ lunch.                               | Karen ____________ money.                           |
| Fred ____________ friends.                            | Stella ____________ singing.                        |
| Marge ____________ drinks.                            | Alice ____________ sugar.                           |
| Will ____________ films.                              | Sheila ____________ loudly.                         |

Now listen, check and repeat.

27.4 Listen and circle the verb form you hear, past or present.

1. I always walk / walked away from fights.      5. I always hate / hated Sundays.
2. I think they want / wanted to talk.          6. You never help / helped Alice.
3. Me and my friends laugh / laughed a lot.     7. They need / needed more time.
4. On Saturdays, we dance / danced all night.    8. They paint / painted the walls every few years.

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentences in 27.4, choosing the present or past tense. Make a note of which tense you say. Then listen to your recording in about two weeks. Is it clear which tense you said?
REcord, reCORD
Stress in two-syllable words

Many two-syllable words come from a one-syllable word. For example, the word artist comes from the word art, and the word remove comes from the word move. In these two-syllable words, the stress is on the syllable of the original word:

artist = Oo (stress on the first syllable)  remove = oO (stress on the second syllable)

Here are some more examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nouns and adjectives</th>
<th>verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>art – artist</td>
<td>move – remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive – driver</td>
<td>like – dislike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend – friendly</td>
<td>build – rebuild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fame – famous</td>
<td>come – become</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most two-syllable nouns and adjectives have stress on the first syllable, even if they don't come from an original one-syllable word. For example, ‘brother’ doesn't come from the original word ‘broth’, but it still has the stress pattern Oo.

Listen to this sentence: the nouns and adjectives all have the pattern Oo.

The artist's most famous picture shows some women and children in a lovely forest with a purple mountain behind.

⚠️ Note: However, there are a number of exceptions to this general rule, for example asleep, mistake, machine, alone, which have stress on the second syllable.

Most two-syllable verbs have stress on the second syllable, even if they don't come from an original one-syllable word. For example, ‘repeat’ doesn’t come from the original word ‘peat’, but it still has the stress pattern (oO).

Listen to this sentence: the verbs all have the pattern oO.

Escape to Scotland, forget about work, just relax and enjoy the scenery!

⚠️ Note: There are a number of exceptions to this general rule, for example cancel, copy and two-syllable verbs ending in -er and -en, e.g. answer, enter, offer, listen, happen, open, which all have stress on the first syllable.

Some words are both nouns and verbs. For example, record is a noun if you put stress on the first syllable, and a verb if you put stress on the second syllable. Listen to these examples. You will hear each word twice, first as a noun and then as a verb.

record contrast desert export object present produce protest rebel

⚠️ Note: There is not always a change of stress in words that are both nouns and verbs. For example answer, picture, promise, reply, travel, visit always have stress on the same syllable.

⚠️ Note: The stress stays in the same place when we make longer words from these two-syllable nouns, adjectives and verbs. For example, in both happy (Oo) and unhappy (oOo), the stress is on the syllable happ, and in both depart (oO) and departure (oOo), the stress is on the syllable part.
Exercises

28.1 Make the word in (brackets) into a verb beginning with 'r' and a noun ending with 'r' and use the words to fill the gaps. Then say the sentences. Take care to use the correct stress patterns for the words in the gaps: Oo for the nouns and oO for the verbs. Listen and check.

**EXAMPLE**  
(build) | I asked the ___________ to ___________ the wall.

1 (act) | How did you ___________ when you saw the ___________ coming in?

2 (write) | The ___________ decided to ___________ the whole book.

3 (paint) | The ___________ tried to ___________ this part of the picture.

4 (print) | We asked the ___________ to ___________ the whole document.

5 (view) | The ___________ will be able to ___________ this programme tomorrow.

6 (play) | They had to ___________ the match after a ___________ was hurt.

28.2 Listen and circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.

**EXAMPLE**  
money, machine, mountain, message

1 answer, agree, allow, attract  
2 middle, minute, mission, mistake  
3 compare, correct, copy, collect  
4 garden, granny, guitar, grammar  
5 complete, common, careful, crazy  
6 pronounce, provide, promise, prefer  
7 pronounce, shoulder, shower, shopping  
8 reason, remove, receive, review

28.3 Read the sentences and decide what stress pattern the words in bold have. Then listen, check and repeat.

**EXAMPLE**  
I got my first record as a present when I was eleven.

record = Oo  present = oo

1 You’ve ___________ well this year, but I’d like to see even more ___________.

progressed = ___________  progress = ___________

2 We ___________ too much petrol and the country’s ___________ figures are going down.

import = ___________  export = ___________

3 It started as a student ___________, but now the army has ___________ against the government.

protest = ___________  rebelled = ___________

4 In the desert, there is a big ___________ between temperatures in the day and at night.

desert = ___________  contrast = ___________

5 These companies ___________ household ___________ such as fridges and washing machines.

produce = ___________  objects = ___________
Second hand, bookshop
Stress in compound words

Compound words are made from two smaller words put together, for example book + shop = bookshop. (They are not always written as one word, for example shoe shop.) In most compound words, the stress is on the first part. For example, the word bookshop has two syllables and the stress is on the first syllable. Listen to these examples.

- bookshop, bus stop, footpath, airport, shoe shop, road sign, car park, bedroom
- traffic light, bus station, sunglasses, boarding card, window seat, check-in desk
- travel agent, art gallery, supermarket, tape recorder, photocopy

**Note:** If the first part of the compound word is an adjective, there may be stress on the second part too, for example OO double room.

**Note:** There may be stress on the second part of a compound noun when:
- the object in the second part is made out of the material in the first, for example OO glass jar;
- the first part tells us where the second part is, for example OO car door.

If the compound word is not a noun, we often put stress on the second part too. Listen to these examples.

- first class, half price, hand made
- bad-tempered, old-fashioned, short-sighted
- overnight, second hand

Sometimes a compound word looks the same as
- a normal adjective and noun,
- a normal noun and verb.

But the pronunciation is different. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oo compound word</th>
<th>OO adjective and noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We keep these plants in a greenhouse during the winter months.</td>
<td>Mr Olsen lives in a small, green house next to the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OO compound word</td>
<td>OO noun and verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I saw her bus pass.</td>
<td>I saw her bus pass.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1

2
### Exercises

#### 29.1

Listen. Write the words in bold in the correct columns.

There's a good **shopping centre**. You can find almost **anything** there. There are bookshops, shoe shops, a travel agent's, a post office, a hairdresser's, a supermarket, everything... and there are a few **snack bars** if you want a **hamburger** or **something**. Oh, and there's a **sports centre** too, with a swimming pool and a **playground** for the kids. But be careful with your **handbag**. I had my **credit card** stolen there once!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oo</th>
<th>Ooo</th>
<th>Ooooo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bookshops</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>shopping centre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Follow up:** Record yourself saying the text. Make sure you put the stress in the correct place.

#### 29.2

Listen. In each sentence, one of the compound words (in bold) has stress on the first part (Oo) and the other has stress on the second part too (OO). Circle the word if there is stress on the second part too.

**Example**  They did the photocopies **overnight**.

1. I got this **motorbike** second hand.
2. Using a **typewriter** is so **old fashioned**.
3. These earrings were **hand made**.
4. I'm short-sighted, like my **grandmother**.
5. All the sunglasses are half price.
6. The **waiting room** is for **first class** only.

#### 29.3

Listen. Which thing is the speaker asking about? Put a tick (✓) next to it and say Yes, I have or No, I haven't. Give a true answer!

**Example**  Have you ever seen a ski jump?

No, I haven't/

1 a 2 a 3 a 4 a

2 b 4 b

Now go to Unit 49

---

*English Pronunciation in Use* 67
Unforgettable
Stress in longer words 1

We can build longer words by adding parts to the beginning or end of shorter words. Usually, this does not change the stress: it stays on the same syllable as in the original word. Look at the example below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>un</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>ful</th>
<th>ness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>ful</td>
<td>ble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>get</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gett</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are is a list of beginnings and endings which do not change the stress of the shorter word:

-able (drinkable)  in-/im- (impossible)  -ness (happiness)
-al (musical)  -ise (civilise)  -ship (friendship)
-er (player)  -ish (childish)  un- (unhappy)
-ful (helpful)  -less (childless)  under- (underpay)
-hood (childhood)  -ly (friendly)  
-ing (boring)  -ment (employment)

Some endings do change the stress in the shorter word. Look how the ending -ion changes the stress in the word educate.

ed  u  cate  tion

When we add the endings -ion or -ian, the stress always moves to the syllable before these endings. Here are some more examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>e</th>
<th>lec</th>
<th>trie</th>
<th>cian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ed</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>ca</td>
<td>tion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mu</th>
<th>sic</th>
<th>cian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mu</td>
<td>si</td>
<td>cian</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: -tion and -cian are pronounced /ʃәn/.

The ending -ic also moves the stress to the syllable before it. Listen to these examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>scientist</th>
<th>scientific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>economy</td>
<td>economic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atom</td>
<td>atomic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artist</td>
<td>artistic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When a syllable changes from unstressed to stressed, or stressed to unstressed, the vowel sound often changes. For example the letter O in atom is pronounced /ə/, but in atomic, it is pronounced /ә/; the A in atom is pronounced /æ/, but in atomic it is /ә/.

Note: The ending -al does not change the stress of the word (see A above), so, for example, the stress is on the same syllable in these two words: economic  economical.
Exercises

30.1 Use the beginnings and endings in A opposite to make longer words from the words below. Listen and check if you get the same words as on the recording. Then listen again and repeat.

Example
child  childhood,  childish,  childishness,  childless

1 believe
2 enjoy
3 care

30.2 Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table according to the stress pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>population</th>
<th>telecommunication</th>
<th>nation</th>
<th>identification</th>
<th>relation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pessimistic</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
<td>scientific</td>
<td>clinic</td>
<td>romantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investigation</td>
<td>public</td>
<td>discussion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>00000o</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00000o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00000o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00000o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00000o</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

30.3 Combine each word with one of the endings from the box, and give the stress pattern of your new word. You may need to change or add other letters to the first word. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

-ion     -ic

Example
inform  information  oo00

1 introduce  
2 base  
3 economy  
4 describe  
5 romance  
6 compete  
7 optimist  
8 celebrate  
9 diplomat  
10 operate  
11 explain  
12 decide  

Now go to Unit 50
Public, publicity
Stress in longer words 2

There are many longer word endings where the last letter is -y. In words with these endings, the stress is placed on the syllable two from the end. Listen to these examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pub</th>
<th>Lic</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>Ty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>Tion</td>
<td>Al</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pho</td>
<td>To</td>
<td>Graph</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cli</td>
<td>Mate</td>
<td>Tol</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>Tro-</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>My</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chem</td>
<td>Istr</td>
<td>Str</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: If we add the ending -ic to a word, the stress goes on the syllable before -ic. (See Unit 30.) Notice the change of stress, for example:
photography  photographic.

Note: In words for an expert in the subject, such as photographer or climatologist, the stress stays on the same syllable as in the word ending in -y:
photography  photographer
climatology  climatologist

Many words for school and university subjects have one of the -y endings in this unit or the ending -ics. Listen to the names of subjects in this text.

At school, I hated science subjects like physics, chemistry and biology, you know, and eh... I wasn’t very good at mathematics and things. I really liked subjects like history, geography, economics. Anyway, when I went to university, I wanted to do geology, but I couldn’t ’cause I was no good at sciences, so in the end I did philosophy!

Note: Many English speakers do not pronounce the second syllable in history, so that it sounds like this: /'histrɪ/. The first part of the word geography may be pronounced as one or two syllables: /dʒə'ɡrɑːfɪ/ or /dʒɪˈɡrɑːfɪ/ oʊʊ. Many speakers do not pronounce the second syllable in mathematics, so it sounds like this: /mæθˈmætɪks/ oʊʊ.

If we combine the various endings in this unit and Unit 30, we can get ‘families’ of words with moving stress patterns. Listen to these examples.

photograph  photography  photographic
economy  economics  economical
national  nationality  nationalise  nationalisation
civil  civility  civilise  civilisation
Exercises

31.1 Make a word ending in -ity from each of these words, and give the stress pattern. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

**Example**: author __________authority___________ ooOo

1 person ________________ 5 nation ________________

2 universe ________________ 6 real ________________

3 public ________________ 7 human ________________

4 major ________________ 8 electric ________________

31.2 Write the words from the box in the correct column according to their stress pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>economics</th>
<th>economy</th>
<th>physics</th>
<th>chemistry</th>
<th>geography /ˈdʒɒɡrəfi/</th>
<th>mathematics /ˈmæθəmætɪks/</th>
<th>sociology</th>
<th>history /ˈhɪstri/</th>
<th>geology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oo</td>
<td>Ooo</td>
<td>o0oo</td>
<td>oo0oo</td>
<td>ooOo</td>
<td>economics</td>
<td>mathematics /ˈmæθəmætɪks/</td>
<td>sociology</td>
<td>history /ˈhɪstri/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

31.3 Fill the gaps with a word from the box which has the stress pattern given. Then listen and check.

**My favourite subjects at school were sciences, especially Ooo __________chemistry___________ and oOoo _________________. I've always been good with numbers, so I was good at oOo _________________. I didn't really like the social science subjects like ooOoo ________________ and Oo _________________, and that's strange because when I went to university I did Ooo _________________**.

31.4 Write in the word which is missing from the family. Then listen, check and repeat.

**Example**: society, __________sociology_________ (ooOo), sociological

1 civil, civilise, ________________ (oooOo)

2 ________________ (oOoo), biologist, biological

3 personal, ________________ (ooOoo), personalise

4 legal, legalise, ________________ (oooOo)

5 ________________ (Oo), authority, authorise

Now go to Unit 51
DON'T LOOK NOW!
Sentences with all the words stressed

In a sentence, we put stress on one syllable of all the most important words. In some situations, emergencies for example, all of the words are important. In this case, there is stress on one syllable of all of the words (in some cases, the sentence may have only one word). Listen to the sentence stress in these examples.

O Help! Quick! Smile!
Oo Quiet! Sorry!
OO Look out! Take care! Wake up! Don't move! Come back! Stand still! Sit down!
OoO Don't forget! Hurry up! Go away! Stay awake! Don't be late!
OoO Keep quiet! Don't worry!
OOO Don't look now! Go straight on! Don't turn round!
oOoo Emergency!

In English sentence stress, the following kinds of words are usually stressed. The examples given are from the sentences in A above.

verbs (help)
two-part verbs (look out)
adjectives (quick)
nouns (emergency)
negative auxiliary verbs (don't)

⚠️ Note: Positive auxiliary verbs such as be in Don't be late! are not usually stressed.

Sentences with all the words stressed have a distinctive rhythm. You can hear this well in these chants. Listen.

O O,     O O
Don't move! Take care!
Keep calm! Stay there!

O O O
Go straight on!
Don't look down!
Go straight on!
Don't turn round!

O O,     O o O
Don't stop! Carry on!
Run! Run! Get away!
Quick! Quick! Hurry up!
Exercises

32.1 Match each sentence with a sentence from the box with the same rhythm. Write the sentences in the correct place. Then listen, check and repeat.

Don't move! Run! Don't worry! Go straight on! Go away! Sorry!

EXAMPLE OoO Don't be late! Go away!

1 Oo Silence!

2 OOO Don't look down!

3 O Wait!

4 OO Get back!

5 OoO Keep quiet!

32.2 What are they saying? Use the grammar and sentence stress information to guess.

EXAMPLE

oOoo (noun)

O (verb)

OO (two-part verb)

OoO (two-part verb)

OOO (negative auxiliary, two-part verb)

Oo (adjective)

32.3 Listen and complete these chants. Then play the recording and say the chant at the same time.

1 Don't sleep! Stay awake!

Get dressed! Don't late!

2 still! Stay there!

Don't move! care!

3 Say please! Don't rude!

Sit! Eat your food!

Now go to Unit 52
**THAT could be the MAN**

**Unstressed words**

All of the sentences below have three syllables with this stress pattern: OoO. The middle word in each sentence is unstressed because it is not as important as the other two words. Listen.

O   o   O
What's your name?
Tom was right.
Dogs can swim.
Close the door!
Wait and see.
Go to bed!

These are the kinds of words which are not normally stressed, with example words from the sentences in A above.

- pronouns *(your)*
- the verb *be (was)*
- auxiliary verbs *(can)*
- articles *(the)*
- conjunctions *(and, or)*
- prepositions *(to)*

⚠️ **Note:** Negative auxiliary verbs *(can't, don't, hasn't, etc.)* are usually stressed. See Unit 32.

There may be more than one of these unstressed words between two stressed words. In the sentences below, each sentence has the same two stressed words with an increasing number of unstressed words between. Listen. Notice that the length of time between the two stressed words is about the same, however many unstressed words are fitted between.

00 That man.
0o0 That's the man.
0oo0 That was the man.
0oooo0 That could be the man.

⚠️ **Note:** Speakers can choose to put stress on words which are normally unstressed. They do this for emphasis or contrast. (See Unit 49.)
Exercises

33.1 Give the stress patterns for these sentences.

Example: Go to the shops.

1. Go to school.
2. Where was the key?
3. Tell John.
4. What was in the news?
5. What's your name?

33.2 Put one of the unstressed words from the box in the middle of each phrase or sentence below. Then say the phrases or sentences with this stress pattern: 000.

or my a it can some of are

1. Bring _______ here!
2. Mel's _______ nurse.
3. Whales _______ big.
4. Jane _______ drive.
5. Lots _______ eggs.
6. Pass _______ fail?
7. Have _______ bread.
8. Where's _______ bike?

33.3 Listen. How many unstressed words are there between the stressed words in each sentence? Write 0, 1, 2 or 3.

Example: Drink ... milk. ___

1. Eat ... cheese. ___
2. That ... man. ___
3. What ... name? ___
4. What ... for? ___
5. Go ... shops. ___
6. Go ... home. ___
7. Turn ... right. ___

33.4 Complete each set of four sentences with the unstressed words given. Each sentence should have one more unstressed word than the sentence before, so that the four sentences have the same pattern as in the example. Then listen, check and repeat.

Example: unstressed words: it, some, with

OO Eat cheese.
OoO Eat _______ cheese.
OooO Eat _______ it with _______ cheese.
OoooO Eat _______ it with some _______ cheese.

1. unstressed words: it, of, the, some, with

OO Drink milk.
OoO Drink _______ milk.
OooO Drink _______ milk.
OoooO Drink _______ milk.

2. unstressed words: it, the, to

OO Turn right.
OoO Turn _______ right.
OooO Turn _______ right.
OoooO Turn _______ right.

Now go to Unit 53
I'll ask her (Alaska)
Pronouns and contractions

Pronouns in sentences are usually unstressed. Look at this sentence: *I met him*. The first and third words are pronouns. So this sentence has the stress pattern oOoO.

Listen to these sentences. You will hear each one twice: first in careful speech and then in fast speech. Notice that in fast speech:
- the speaker doesn’t pronounce the letter H in he, her, him, his unless it is at the beginning of the sentence.
- the vowel sound in the pronouns and his, her, their, our is very short.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>oOo</th>
<th>oOoO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I met him.</td>
<td>I met his wife.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You know her.</td>
<td>They read my book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They saw you.</td>
<td>He knows their son.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She phoned me.</td>
<td>We called their friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He likes them.</td>
<td>She hates her job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We found it.</td>
<td>You need our help.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Note: You don’t need to copy the fast speech pronunciation. People will understand you if you use careful speech. But you need to be able to understand fast speech.

Pronouns are often joined to auxiliary verbs (is, have, will, etc.) in contractions. For example, when we speak, we join the I and will together to form I’ll. In the sentence I’ll ask her there are four words but only three syllables. This is because the pronoun and contraction are pronounced as one syllable. This sentence therefore has the stress pattern oOo (the pronouns and contractions I’ll and her are unstressed). In fast speech, it may be pronounced the same as Alaska. Listen to these examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>oOo</th>
<th>/əˈlæskə/</th>
<th>(like Alaska)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’ll ask her.</td>
<td>/æˈlæskə/</td>
<td>(like am asking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m coming.</td>
<td>/æmˈkæmɪŋ/</td>
<td>(like am coming)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s finished.</td>
<td>/hɪzˈfɪnɪʃt/</td>
<td>(like his finished)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They’re hungry.</td>
<td>/ðeˈhʌŋɡri/</td>
<td>(like the hungry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’ve seen him.</td>
<td>/wɛvˈsiːnɪm/</td>
<td>(like wiv seen im)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She’s angry.</td>
<td>/ʃiˈæŋɡri/</td>
<td>(like shiz angry)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⚠️ Note: You do not join the pronoun to an auxiliary verb at the end of a sentence. For example, say Yes, I will, don’t say Yes, I’ll.

⚠️ Note: You only put stress on pronouns if you want to emphasise or contrast something. It is like underlining with your voice. For example: *You don’t need him, but he needs you!*  
(See Unit 49.)
Exercises

34.1 Add pronouns to these words to make sentences with the pattern o0o0. Do not use the same pronoun twice. Then say your sentences aloud, making the rhythm clear.

**EXAMPLE** drove/car  She drove her car.
1 read/book ........................................  3 drank/milk ........................................
2 sang/song ........................................  4 ate/lunch ........................................

34.2 Listen and write the words you hear in the gaps.

**EXAMPLE** Can you tell her to call me please?
1 Can you give ________ to ________ please?
2 Did ________ meet ________ daughter, Catherine?
3 I don’t think ________ likes ________.
4 What did ________ say to ________?
5 Where did ________ buy ________ guitar?
6 What’s ________ mother’s name?
7 Where are ________ parents from?
8 ________ bought presents for ________ children.

34.3 Write the sentences below again. Change the people to pronouns, and make the auxiliary verbs (has/is/are etc.) into contractions. Then underline the stressed syllables in your sentences. There should be two in each sentence. Then listen, check and repeat.

**EXAMPLE** Helen has given Robert some money. She’s given him some money.
1 Robert is buying presents for the children.
2 Bonnie and Max are opening their presents.
3 Bonnie and Max will thank Robert for the presents.
4 Robert will thank Helen for the money.

34.4 Think of a computer which people speak into and it writes what they say. This computer wrote the underlined parts of these conversations incorrectly. (You can read what the computer heard in phonemic letters.) Write the correct words.

**EXAMPLE**
– Do you know Mike?
– Yes. Ametim /æ'metim/ yesterday. I met him
1 – Come on kids, do your homework!
– Wivdunit /ˈwɪv daʊnt/ already!
2 – What’s his name?
– I don’t know. Alaskim /æl'æskim/
3 – Goodbye.
– Goodbye. Alseyə /æl'si:ʒə/ tomorrow!
4 – Why isn’t Neil here?
– Hjsongta /hɪz'ɡɒntə/ Paris for the weekend.
5 – Have you told Maria yet?
– No. Altella /æl'tɛlə/ tomorrow.
You don’t normally put stress on *are* in the middle of a sentence. Listen to this rhyme.

Roses are red,
Violets are blue,
Flowers are nice,
And so are you!

**Note:** Many speakers pronounce *are* just as the weak vowel sound /ə/, but if the following word begins with a vowel sound, the /ə/ is pronounced too, for example *People are angry.* (See Unit 39.)

The word *is* (and *’s*) is not usually spoken as a separate syllable; it is usually joined to the syllable before, for example *Snow is*’s *white.* But if the word before ends with letters like S, CE, GE and CH, it is a new syllable, for example *Grass is green.* (See Unit 24.) Listen to the examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>is</strong> and <em>’s</em> – not a separate syllable</th>
<th><strong>is</strong> and <em>’s</em> – a separate syllable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Snow is white.</td>
<td>Grass is green.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your hair is dirty.</td>
<td>Your face is dirty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The road is closed.</td>
<td>The bridge is closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The clock is broken.</td>
<td>My watch is broken.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** After a pronoun, *am, is* and *are* are usually written as a contraction (*’m, ’s, ’re*). (See Unit 34.)

In the middle of a sentence, *was* and *were* are also usually unstressed. Listen to the chant.

She was first.
You were last.
   It was hard.
   She was fast.
You were slow.
She was strong.
   I was tired.
   It was long.

The verb *be* is normally unstressed at the start of a sentence too. Listen to this chant.

Am I right? Am I wrong?
Is it short? Is it long?
Are you hot? Are you cold?
Were they young? Were they old?
Is it false? Is it true?
Was it me? Was it you?

**Note:** The verb *be* is stressed in negative contractions (e.g. *aren’t*), and at the end of sentences (e.g. *Yes, I am*). (See Unit 36.)

**Note:** The verb *be* is also stressed for emphasis or contrast, for example: *That can’t be John ... Wait a minute ... It is John!* (See Unit 49.)
Exercises

35.1 Circle the word are if you think the /ə/ is pronounced. Then listen, check and repeat.

There are a lot of books in the picture. Some of them are on the desks and some are on the shelves. There are some trees outside the windows. The windows are open. There are some pens on one of the desks.

35.2 Tick (√) the sentences where is is always a separate syllable. Then listen, check and repeat.

EXAMPLE

a Lunch is ready! ✓
1 a The house is cold.
2 a The taxi is here.
3 a The beach is crowded.
4 a The steak is good.
5 a The meaning is clear.
6 a The smell is awful!
7 a Juice is good for you.
b Dinner is ready!
1 b The room is cold.
2 b The bus is here.
3 b The park is crowded.
4 b The fish is good.
5 b The message is clear.
6 b The noise is awful!
7 b Fruit is good for you.

35.3 Listen and circle the verb you hear.

1 People are / were angry.
2 Alice is / was here.
3 Your face is / was dirty.
4 The birds are / were singing.
5 The books are / were cheap.
6 The fish are / were dying.
7 The place is / was nice.
8 Paris is / was nice.
9 The children are / were tired.
10 My friends are / were coming.

35.4 Listen and fill the gaps with one word.

EXAMPLE That was my favourite.

1 His parents rich.
2 The birds singing.
3 The beach crowded.
4 The children at home.
5 He going out at the weekend.
6 Her dog called Kip.
7 This car very expensive.
8 The drinks free on this flight.
9 The weather terrible.
10 The banks closed on Saturday.
**What do you Think?**

**Auxiliary verbs**

OooO is a very common rhythm in questions beginning with Wh- words (*when*, *where*, *what*, etc.) followed by auxiliary verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wh- word</th>
<th>auxiliary (stressed)</th>
<th>pronoun (unstressed)</th>
<th>main verb (stressed)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>think?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Listen to these examples. You will hear each one twice: first in careful speech and then in fast speech. Notice how, in fast speech, the vowel is very weak in the auxiliary do and does.

OooO

What do you think?
Where do you live?
What does she mean?
Where does he work?
What did he say?
Why did you go?

Other auxiliaries are also usually unstressed in questions. Listen. Note that the speaker does not pronounce the first letters of the auxiliaries will, have and has.

What will he do?
What have I done?
Where has she been?
What can you see?

Auxiliaries are stressed in negative contractions and at the end of sentences. Listen to these examples.

Yes, I do.
I don’t know.
Yes, I will.
He won’t say.
Yes, I have.
I haven’t done it.
Yes, I can.
I can’t help.

⚠️ Note: Auxiliaries can also be stressed for emphasis or contrast. For example: *I’m not English, but I am British!* (See Unit 49.)

In very fast speech, some speakers pronounce many of these questions with only three syllables. Listen.

OoO

What do you want? /wɒdɪə'wɒnt/ (sounds like: What dya want?)
What does he do? /'wɒtsə'du:/ (sounds like: What si do?)
Where have you been? /'wevəvɪə'bɛn/ (sounds like: Wherve ya bin?)
Where did he go? /'wɛərɪdɪ'gau/ (sounds like: Where di go?)

**English Pronunciation in Use**
Exercises

36.1 Listen and complete the questions.

**EXAMPLE** What **did he** do?

1 Where ________________ live? 6 Who ________________ meet?
2 What ________________ say?  7 Where ________________ sit?
3 Where ________________ work? 8 When ________________ end?
4 What ________________ see?  9 Where ________________ been?
5 Where ________________ gone? 10 Who ________________ asked?

36.2 Write the questions in this conversation and give the stress patterns. Then listen, check and repeat the questions.

**EXAMPLE**

A: ________________ what do you do? ? OooO
B: I’m a doctor.

1 A: ________________? 
   B: I live in Kingston, Jamaica.
2 A: ________________? 
   B: I work in the University Hospital.
3 A: ________________? 
   B: Yes, I’m married. My husband is a teacher.
4 A: ________________? 
   B: He teaches History and Geography.
5 A: ________________? 
   B: At the Grove Road Secondary School.
6 A: ________________? 
   B: I met him when I was on holiday in Florida.
7 A: ________________? 
   B: We got married in 1999.

36.3 Think of a computer which people speak into and it writes what they say. This computer wrote the underlined parts of these questions incorrectly. (You can read what it heard in phonemic letters.) Correct the writing.

**EXAMPLE** What **diə /dʒə/ mean?** ________________ what do you mean?

1 Who **va:/va:/ told?** ____________________________?
2 What **dʒ /dʒə/ say?** ____________________________?
3 When **diə /dʒə/ start?** ____________________________?
4 Where **zi /zi/ gone?** ____________________________?
5 How **diə /dʒə/ do?** ____________________________?
A PIECE OF CHEESE
Pronouncing short words (a, of, or)

Short words like articles (a, the), conjunctions (and, or) and prepositions (to, of) are usually unstressed. Listen to this chant. Every line has the stress pattern oOoOo. They have this rhythm because the first and third words are all unstressed. These words are: some, and, a, of, for, the, to, or, as.

Shopping list
Some milk and eggs,
A tin of peas,
A snack for lunch;
Some fruit and cheese.
The loaf of bread,
A jar of jam,
Some juice to drink,
A piece of ham.
Some pears or grapes,
Some beans and rice,
A can of beer
As cold as ice/

Listen again to the chant in A. Notice that the vowels in all the unstressed syllables are pronounced the same. This sound is written as /ə/ in the phonemic alphabet (see Unit 7). Also, in fast speech, the consonant sounds after the vowel in these words may not be pronounced. In this case, and sounds like an, and of sounds like a. Listen to these examples.

and sounds like an:
an apple and an orange and an onion

of sounds like a:
a bit of this and a bit of that

You don’t need to copy the fast speech pronunciation. People will understand you if you use careful speech. But you need to be able to understand fast speech.

⚠️ Note: The consonant sound in of is not dropped when the following word begins with a vowel, for example some of each.

The vowel sound in to and the is different if the following word begins with a vowel. In this case, to changes from /tə/ to /təl/, and the changes from /θə/ to /θəl/. Listen to the difference.

We need water to drink and food to eat.
I’ll have the fish, and the apple pie for dessert.
Exercises

37.1 What are the things in the picture? Write them in the correct column according to the rhythm (there are two phrases in each column). Use these words: bowl, bottle, jar, packet, bag, pot, carton, kilo. Then say the phrases aloud.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>o0o</th>
<th>o0o0o</th>
<th>o000o</th>
<th>o0o0o</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A bowl of soup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

37.2 In these sentences, both of the words in italics are possible and they sound similar in fast speech. Listen and circle the word you hear.

1. I had a salad as / and a main course.
2. Give her an / some egg if she's hungry.
3. She went to look at / for the fruit.
4. He gave me a basket of / for bread.
5. Get some pasta and / or rice.
6. I like the / to cook.
7. She ordered a / the soup.
8. Have some / an orange juice.
9. He invited me at / for lunch.
10. He made this jar for / of jam himself.

37.3 Listen and fill the gaps. Then listen, check and repeat. Make sure you keep the same rhythm: o0o0.

**EXAMPLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>glass</th>
<th>of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>egg</td>
<td>chips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>bag</td>
<td>nuts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>cook</td>
<td>rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>fast</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>meal</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>box</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

37.4 Think of a computer which people speak into and it writes what they say. This computer wrote these sentences incorrectly. Write the correct sentences.

**EXAMPLE** We had beans an rice. We had beans and rice.

1. We had a nice cup a tea.
2. I don't want a go out tonight.
3. I need a drinker water.
4. We cook to chicken.
5. He can't cooker meal.
6. Have a nice cream!
7. Come in an sit down.

Follow up: Practise saying the chant in A on the opposite page. Tap the table or your foot in time as you say it.

Now go to Unit 57
Pets enter, pet centre
Joining words 1

In speech, words are not separated; they join together. Sometimes it is difficult to know where one word finishes and the next word begins. For example, pets enter sounds the same as pet centre because the consonant /s/ could be at the end of the first word or at the start of the second word. Listen to the examples. The phrases on the left sound the same as the phrases on the right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pets enter</th>
<th>pet centre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stopped aching</td>
<td>stop taking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice-cream</td>
<td>I scream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>known aim</td>
<td>no name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>called Annie</td>
<td>call Danny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clocks tops</td>
<td>clock stops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missed a night</td>
<td>Mr Knight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The spelling may be different in the two phrases which sound the same. For example, the consonant sound /s/ is spelt S in pets, but C in centre. The consonant sound /t/ is spelt D at the end of stopped, but T in taking.

Note: The /h/ is often dropped from the beginning of pronouns, so that thanked him sounds like thank Tim.

Normally, we know from the context what a word is. For example, these two sentences sound the same, but we know the first one is wrong because it has no sense.

- It snow good.
- It's no good.

In fluent speech, people join words together. When one word ends with a consonant and the next word begins with a vowel, imagine that the consonant is at the beginning of the next word. For example, say the first line of the chant below as if the words were divided like this:

/ go  t a p a t e /

Listen to the chant and repeat. The rhythm of each line is the same. The symbol _ shows where the consonant sound joins to the vowel sound of the next word.

Got up at eight,
Got on a bus,
Went into work,
Worked until two,
Went out for lunch,
Worked until six,
Back on the bus,
Switched on the box_,
Slept in a chair.

(*box = television)
Exercises

38.1 What two words do you get if you move the consonant from the end of one word to the beginning of the next or vice versa? Complete the table. Remember: think about sound, not spelling!

**Example**

cats eyes  
cat size

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>_______ able</td>
<td>✖️ fell table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>known you</td>
<td>✖️ no __________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>cooks</td>
<td>✖️ cook steak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>seen you</td>
<td>✖️ __________ new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>faced</td>
<td>✖️ face told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>an ocean</td>
<td>✖️ a __________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td>✖️ stopped earning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>escaped error</td>
<td>✖️ __________ terror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>cheer</td>
<td>✖️ meant year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>learn chess</td>
<td>✖️ __________ ‘yes’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

38.2 Think of a computer which people speak into and it writes what they say. This computer wrote the sentences below incorrectly. Correct the phrases that are wrong using the phrases in the box.

**Example** It snow good; I can’t fix it.  ✖️’s no good

1 Known uses good news, as they say.  ✖️
2 Have you phone jaw parents this week? ✖️
3 I’ve never her July before.  ✖️
4 I think I fell train; let’s go inside. ✖️
5 These ship steak cars across the river. ✖️
6 They join does for dinner.  ✖️
7 We stop choosing the typewriter when we got the computer. ✖️

38.3 Show where you can join a word ending with a consonant sound to a word starting with a vowel sound using this symbol: _ (there are eight in total). Then listen and practise saying the poem.

There was _ an old man called Greg,  
Who tried to break open an egg.  
He kicked it around,  
But fell on the ground,  
And found that he’d broken a leg.
After eight, after rate
Joining words 2

When we say the spellings of words or names, we normally join them together in one continuous sound. For example, we say ABC like this: /eɪbɪsɪəl/ (without any pause between the letters). Sometimes we have to add an extra sound to separate vowel sounds. Listen to these examples. The added sound is in small letters.

URL /juːˌɔːːəˈeɪl/
AIM /eɪɪˈem/
BORN /biːʔəʊˈɔːːəˈen/.

The same three sounds, /r/, /l/ and /w/, are also added between whole words to separate vowel sounds.

The consonant sound /r/ is used to separate vowel sounds when there is a letter R at the end of the first word. In many accents of English, including Southern British, this final letter R is not pronounced, so the word ends in a vowel sound. For example, the word after is pronounced /aːftə/. But if the following word begins with a vowel sound, the R is pronounced, in order to separate the two vowels. For example, the R is pronounced in after eight /aːftəˌeɪt/. In this case, the R sounds like it is at the start of the next word, so after eight sounds like after rate. Listen to the examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R not pronounced</th>
<th>R pronounced</th>
<th>sounds like ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>her card</td>
<td>her ace</td>
<td>her race</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under sixteen</td>
<td>under age</td>
<td>under age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after nine</td>
<td>after eight</td>
<td>after rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four legs</td>
<td>four eyes</td>
<td>four risc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear skies</td>
<td>clear air</td>
<td>clear rare</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Sometimes we pronounce an /r/ to separate vowel sounds even if there is no R in the spelling. For example saw Alice can be pronounced /sɔːˌæls/.

'1 saw her race.'

The sounds /j/ and /w/ can also be pronounced to separate vowel sounds.
- If the first word ends in a vowel sound like /i/ and the next word starts with any vowel sound, we add the sound /j/ (Y).
- If the first word ends in a vowel sound like /uː/ or /uː/ and the next word starts with any vowel sound, we add the sound /w/ (W).

Listen to the examples. Notice that /j/ or /w/ is pronounced even when there is no Y or W in the spelling.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>no /j/ or /w/ pronounced</th>
<th>/j/ or /w/ pronounced</th>
<th>sounds like ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>every toe /ˈevri ˈtəʊ/</td>
<td>every ear /ˈevri ˈɪə/</td>
<td>every year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he saves /ˈhɛr ˈsɛrviŋz/</td>
<td>he earns /ˈhɛr ˈɪəriŋz/</td>
<td>he earns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you drank /ˈjuː ˈdræŋk/</td>
<td>you ache /ˈjuː ˈweɪk/</td>
<td>you wake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you hurt /ˈjuː ˈhɜːt/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

39.1 Spell out these names. If possible, record yourself. Then listen to the recording and compare it with yours.

1 TOM  
2 BEN  
3 ERIN  
4 TANIA  
5 ROSIE

39.2 In these pairs, the first and second word are joined with the phonemic letter shown. Read them aloud, then say them again, this time reversing the order of the words, so that a different sound joins the first and second word. You don’t have to write anything. Then listen and check.

EXAMPLE two_ or three_  three_ or two_

1 grey_ and blue 
2 you_ and me 
3 where_ or why 
4 you_ or her 
5 here_ or away

39.3 The word rise is ‘hidden’ in this sentence: Her eyes are open. It is the underlined part. This is clear if we look at the phonemic spelling. The word rise is /raiz/. You can see this underlined in this phonemic spelling of the sentence: /həraɪzərəʊpən/. The words in the box are ‘hidden’ in the sentences below. Find them and underline them, and write the hidden word after the sentence.

wait rage winter yours reach years why rise ride wake

EXAMPLE The boat’s useless without the oars. yours

1 Are you into golf? 
2 He has hair over the ears. 
3 It’s starting to ache. 
4 I’m not sure I’d agree with you. 
5 She has a shower each morning. 
6 It’s quarter to eight already. 
7 Do I owe you anything? 
8 Her eyes are a strange colour. 
9 You should know better at your age!

Now listen to the sentences. Can you hear the ‘hidden words’?
Try saying the sentences, making sure you pronounce the hidden words.
Greet guests, Greek guests
Joining words 3

When one word ends with a consonant sound and the next word begins with a consonant sound, the first consonant sound is often changed. For example, greet guests sounds the same as Greek guests because the T in greet and the K in Greek are both pronounced like /ɡ/. This is because of the influence of the /ɡ/ in the following word, guests.

The sounds which most frequently change when they are at the end of a word are /d/, /t/ and /n/. They can change so much that the word sounds like another word. Listen to these examples:

I’ve got a bad cold. (bad sounds similar to bag)
We had a bad year. (bad sounds similar to badge)
They shot bears. (shot sounds similar to shop)
They shot cats. (shot sounds similar to shock)
What’s your son called? (son sounds similar to sung)
My son made this. (son sounds similar to sum)

The consonants /d/ and /t/ may disappear completely when the next word starts with a consonant. For example, in the phrases below, the verb may sound as if it is in the present tense.

asked questions mixed paint boiled carrots used power

Note: We can usually tell what a word is from the context. For example, in the sentence I sat in the waiting room and dig crosswords, the word before crosswords sounds like dig but we know from the context it must be did.
40.1 The underlined word in each sentence sounds like one of the words in the box. Match them. Then listen and check.

**Example**

torch / talk

| talk / torch | a I taught classes this morning.     | talk |
|             | b You taught yourself French.       | torch |

1

| sum / sung  | a The sun burnt my neck.             |
|            | b The sun came up over the mountains. |

2

| beak / beach | a I can't beat you at this game.     |
|              | b I can beat Carol at tennis.        |

3

| coke / coach | a I can't get this coat clean.       |
|              | b Is this the coat you bought?       |

4

| cheap / cheek | a They cheat quite a lot.             |
|               | b They cheat people out of their money. |

40.2 Think of a computer which people speak into and it writes what they say. This computer wrote these sentences incorrectly. Listen. Guess from the context which word is wrong, circle it and write the correct word.

**Example**

Watch your name? What's

1 I hate going to museums and art galleries.  
2 Have you ever tribe Belgian beer?   
3 I got ache questions correct out of ten.  
4 She's a good player and can wing games against most people.  
5 He copied out the text line by line.   
6 It was a bag question; nobody got the answer right.  

40.3 You will hear sentences with one of the two beginnings given. Listen and complete the correct sentence. Put a – in the other space.

**Example**

He put the soup back in the __________

He put the suit back in the __________

| 1 I got this cut by __________ | 3 Her heart broke when __________ |
| I got this cup by __________   | Her harp broke when __________   |
| 2 I'll have to warn my __________ | 4 It's the last turn before __________ |
| I'll have to warn my __________ | It's the last term before __________ |
Could you say that again?
Understanding conversation

Listen to this conversation. What is the cause of the misunderstanding?

A: I've just got this one bag.
B: Wow! Do you always travel so light?
A: Yeah. Can't stand the wait, you know, at the airport ...
B: Yeah, I know. My bag's really heavy.
But it's got wheels, so I don't have to carry it.
A: No, I mean the waiting, you know, waiting for your cases to come out on the belt.

The speakers pronounce all the words clearly but there is a misunderstanding because the words weight and wait have the same pronunciation. When Speaker B says heavy, Speaker A knows he understood weight, not wait, so she corrects the misunderstanding.

In conversation, we need to know when communication is going wrong, and then correct it.

When we don't understand what someone says in a foreign language, we often think it is because we don't know the language well. But often it is not our fault. Listen to this man from London. Do you understand what he is saying?

It leaves at free forty-five this afternoon.

There are many different accents in English. In this accent, three sounds like free. In this example, you can probably guess from the context that he is saying three forty-five. The context often helps us understand what people are saying.

We can't always guess from the context. Sometimes we need to ask questions in order to understand. Remember these ways of asking.

1. Sorry, I don't understand.
2. How do you pronounce this?
3. Could you repeat that?
4. My name's /ʃɪvən/. How do you spell that?
Exercises

41.1 In each of the sentences below, one of the words is written wrongly. It is written wrongly because that’s what it sounds like in the accent of the speaker. All the accents are different from standard, British English. Listen and guess from the context which word is written wrongly and correct it.

**Example**  She’s a _riter_ of romantic novels.

1 Read about it in the noose papers.
2 She went to hospital ’cause she had art problems.
3 We watched TV and den we went to bed.
4 I want to tank you for your help.
5 They were jailed for robin a bank.
6 With a bit of look, we’ll win this game.
7 Can you old the umbrella while I get my keys out?

41.2 Listen to these dialogues and fill in the missing words. Then listen again and say B’s lines.

1
A: Can I help you?
B: Yes, I’d like to see... I’m sorry, _
do you pronounce this name?
B: Yes, I’d _ to see Doctor
O’Shaughnessy, please.

2
A: My name’s Mark.
B: _ Mike, you say?
A: No, Mark. M-A-R-K.
B: Oh, I see. You don’t _ the R?
A: No, not in my accent.

3
A: My surname’s Vaugn.
B: Sorry, could you _ that, please?
A: Vaugn.
B: Vaugn? How do you _ that?
A: V-A-U-G-N.
B: Oh yes, I’ve seen that name before!

41.3 Listen. Reply to each sentence you hear using one of the expressions below. Number the expressions in the order you use them.

_  Sorry, could you repeat that, please?
_  Sorry, I don’t understand.
_  How do you pronounce that?
_  Can you speak more slowly, please?
'Was that the question?' he asked.

Reading aloud: 'pronouncing punctuation'

Listen to this text. Notice that in speech there are pauses where, in writing, there are punctuation marks.

I can never guess the weather right. If I wear a warm shirt, the weather's hot. If I wear cool clothes, there's a cold wind. When I don't take my umbrella, it rains. If I take my umbrella, does it rain? Of course not! Then I leave it on the bus! Oh well. We all have our weaknesses, I guess!

⚠️ Note: Reading aloud is good pronunciation practice. Don't forget to 'pronounce the punctuation'!

Pauses can change the meaning of what we say. Listen to these pairs of sentences and note the difference in pronunciation.

a) It was cold outside. There was snow on the ground.
b) It was cold. Outside, there was snow on the ground.

a) Was that the question he asked?
b) ‘Was that the question?’ he asked.

a) I got up, quickly got dressed, and went downstairs.
b) I got up quickly, got dressed, and went downstairs.

We need to use pauses to give us time to think, and to give the listener time to take in the information. Listen to this address and note that there are pauses where there are line breaks and where there are gaps in the telephone number. Notice also that when the speaker spells her surname and email address, she divides the letters into groups.

Linda Wharton
29 Bolton Road
Wigan
Lancashire
WN16 9FT
England
Tel: 090 827 7365
email: linwar@applegroove.com

⚠️ Note: Practise saying the spelling of your own name. Decide how you will group the letters, if your name is long.
Exercises

42.1 Read this weather forecast aloud, 'pronouncing the punctuation'. Record yourself if you can. Then listen and compare.

And for Friday, well, another wintry day in all parts of the region. Temperatures near freezing in many places, and along the coast, the wind will make it feel very cold indeed. Inland, some snow on the hills, and there may be fog in the valleys. If you’re out and about driving, watch out for those icy roads! And for the weekend? Well, we’re not expecting much change, I’m afraid. And that’s all from me. Goodnight.

42.2 The texts below are really two sentences, but the punctuation is missing. The two sentences are divided before or after the underlined expression. Listen and draw one line / to show where the sentences are divided.

EXAMPLE They’re leaving / soon it’ll be quieter.

1 There was nothing inside it was empty.
2 We walked carefully downstairs it was dark.
3 I watched him silently he opened the drawer.
4 The rain didn’t stop the next day it just carried on.
5 The weather was hot at the weekend it was 40 degrees.
6 I saw her clearly she was hungry.
7 It was cold last night the roads were icy.

Follow up: Read the sentences above aloud, once with the sentence break before the underlined expression, then again with the sentence break after it.

42.3 Listen and write the name, address and contact details that you hear.

Name: ____________________________
Address: ____________________________
____________________________________
____________________________________
Postcode: ___________________________
Telephone: _________________________
email: _____________________________

Follow up: Read out the information you wrote above. Try to put the pauses exactly where they were in the recording you heard. Then listen again and compare.

42.4 Say your own name, address and contact details. Record it if possible. Now go to Unit 3.
A shirt and a tie / a shirt and tie  
Grouping words

Listen to the underlined phrase in these two sentences. Notice that in the first one, the speaker pauses after the word shirt, so the words are divided into two groups. The line / shows where they are divided. The second phrase is pronounced all as one group.

I bought a shirt / and a tie.
He was wearing a shirt and tie.

The speakers group the words differently because the first speaker thinks of the shirt and tie as separate things, and the second speaker thinks of them as things that go together in a group.

Listen to this sentence. Notice that the speaker divides it into groups. In each group, the words are pronounced all joined together like one long word.

I bought a nice new jacket / with a zip down the front / and a lot of pockets.

There is no rule about where to divide words into groups, but it must make sense. If the word groups don’t make sense, it is very hard to understand.

Listen to the same sentence again, but this time divided badly. Notice how strange it sounds.

I bought a nice new / jacket with a zip down the / front and a lot of pockets. x

Listen to this woman. She is remembering the uniform she had at school. Listen to how she divides her words into groups. This is shown here by the / lines.

... I remember / we had this school uniform / and it was like all dark brown / a dark brown skirt and jacket / and a white blouse / and we had to have black shoes / and the skirt had to be below the knees / and we all hated this uniform / so we tried to change it / things like / you know / use a belt to bring the skirt higher / or ehh ... whatever / and we weren’t allowed to have earrings / but we wore them anyway / outside the school / and then took them off / when we walked in ...

⚠️ Note: When you are speaking, you often have to pause to think (or breathe!). Put the pause in the break between two groups of words. If you put the pause in the middle of a group of words, it will make you difficult to understand.
43.1 Look at the two ways of dividing the sentences below. For each pair of sentences, cross out the one where the grouping does not make sense.

**Example**

a I bought a ticket and got / on the train.

b I bought a ticket / and got on the train.

1 a It was a small car / with a red stripe along the side.

b It was a small car with a red / stripe along the side.

2 a Do you want chicken and chips / or fish and salad?

b Do you want chicken / and chips or fish and salad?

3 a Derek can wear the most / expensive suit but he never looks smart.

b Derek can wear the most expensive suit / but he never looks smart.

43.2 Here are some sentences giving advice on what clothes to take on different kinds of trip. Divide the sentences using a line (/) over one of the gaps. Choose the gap which makes the best sense. Then listen and check.

**Example** A hot place which gets cold in the evenings:

Take shorts and T-shirts and long trousers and a sweater for the evenings.

1 A ski resort:

Take your boots and ski suit and a dress and some nice shoes for the evenings.

2 A sunny place which sometimes has rain:

Take a hat and sunglasses and T-shirts and an umbrella in case it rains.

3 A business trip with a weekend off in the middle:

Take a smart suit and a shirt and tie and some casual clothes for the weekend.

4 A sightseeing holiday with a few days on the beach at the end:

Take your camera and some good walking shoes and a towel and bathing costume for the beach.

43.3 Listen and draw lines (/) showing where the speaker divides the words into groups.

A man wanted to buy his wife a new dress because it was her birthday so he went to a department store and looked around and he was looking for about an hour but he couldn’t decide and finally this shop assistant came and asked if he needed help he said he was looking for a dress and the shop assistant asked is it for you sir?

Now go to Unit 4
Ehm ...
Showing that you want to continue

A
Listen to this short conversation. The lines of six dots (:::) means that the speaker is making the word before the dots longer.
A: What did you think of the music?
B: Well, it was::: interesting.

B needs time to think of the best word to describe the music. She makes the word was longer to show A that she is still in the conversation. If she paused for all that time, A might think she was not going to answer.

We often say noises like ehm to keep our speaking turn while we are thinking of what to say or doing something else. In the example below, B says it to keep his speaking turn while he looks at his watch.
A: What’s the time?
B: Let’s see, it’s ehm::: nearly seven.

Note: You can use noises like ehm to ‘buy time’ when you are speaking English and you need time to think of a word. If you are silent, the other person may think you have finished and start talking.

B
Listen to this conversation. A and B have started a web site and they are thinking of having some music on it. They are trying to decide what kind of music to have. Both speakers use (:::) often to keep their speaking turns. Notice how they keep their voices on the same level when they say the word before the pause (:::) but their voices go down at the end of their speaking turns (shown with a full stop below).
A: Ehm:::, I don’t know, I think it’s a bit ehm::: sort of::: well, like the music you get in supermarkets or in ehm::: in hotel lifts and places like that.
B: Yeah, I know what you mean, but ehm::: I mean, if we have something stronger like ehm::: well, you know, blues ::: or modern jazz or whatever, well, somebody’ll hate it.
A: Yeah right, so::: maybe we shouldn’t have any music.
B: Yeah well::: but ehm::: but I think everyone expects it these days.
A: Absolutely! So let’s be different!
B: Well, OK::: or::: or we could have something classical?

Note: It is very common for speakers to start their speaking turn by agreeing with what the other person said. Look in the conversation above, for example. At the start of their turns, the speakers use expressions like: Yeah, I know what you mean  Yeah, right  Absolutely  Well, OK.
Exercises

44.1 In all of these conversations, B is doing something else at the same time as speaking. Guess which of these things B is doing and write it. Then listen and check.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>doing a mental calculation</th>
<th>looking in a wallet</th>
<th>writing the numbers down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>checking in a personal diary</td>
<td>looking in a business appointments book</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXAMPLE**

A: My phone number's 067 3786.
B: Just a moment, so that's::: 0::: 6::: 7::: 3::: 7::: 9:::
A: No, 8, it's 3786.
B: Ah, OK, 8::: 6.  
**B is** writing the numbers down.

1 A: Hi! I have an appointment to see Ms Jones.
B: Yes, so you must be Mr::: Mr Gleason?
A: Yeah, that's right.  
B is

2 A: It's just over fifty pounds.
B: Right, so that's ehm::: about 70 dollars?
B is

3 A: Let's meet on Thursday.
B: Let's see, Thursday::: Thursday::: Yes, Thursday, that's fine.
B is

4 A: Can you change this ten for two fives?
B: I think so, let's see, ehm::: yeah, sure.
Here you are.
B is

**Follow up:** Listen and repeat B’s lines (including the long sounds).

44.2 Listen to these sentences. Does the person want to keep the speaking turn (write •••) or has he/she finished (write •)?

**EXAMPLE** I like all kinds of music really, you know, ehm::: rock and roll •••

1 I don’t really have much time to ehm::: to listen to music
2 Yeah, I love Brazilian music, people like Gal Costa
3 She plays quite a lot of instruments, piano, guitar
4 Dad’s really into classical music, you know, specially Mozart
5 I started the piano when I was, let’s see, ehm::: fifteen

44.3 You will hear a girl telling a story. She uses ehm a lot. Write down what she says without the ehm.

I didn’t go to the concert because

Now go to Unit 5
Two words you will often hear in conversation are *anyway* and *well*. Listen to the conversation below. Notice that *anyway* and *well* are often said in quite a high-pitched voice.

A: I nearly got arrested, you know, the other day.
B: You what ... arrested? What do you mean?
A: Well, I'm doing this project on graffiti, you know, at college, and ehm ... so I have to take lots of photos of graffiti and ... 
B: Uh huh.
A: So *anyway*, I saw this train with some amazing graffiti on the side, so I went there to ehm ... take a photo of it. The thing is, it was a bit far from the platform ...
B: So what happened?
A: *Well*, I walked along next to the lines, and then these ehm ... station police came along and said I shouldn't be there, so ehm ... they took me to the office, and then they asked for my ID card, you know, my identity card ...
B: Mmm?
A: *Well*, I didn't have it. I left it at home that day.
B: Oh no!
A: Yeah, so *anyway*, then they didn't know what to do with me, so ehm ... I said, 'Look, I'll leave my camera here and I go home to get my ID card.' In the end, they agreed, so I did that, and they ehm ... wrote my ID number, and then just let me go ...

In the conversation above, A uses *anyway* to show that she is moving on to the next part of the story. In this context, it is usually pronounced in a high voice. Notice that before the word *anyway*, the speaker is not moving the story on, she is just giving some background information. *Anyway* shows she is returning to the story.

In the conversation above, A uses *well* to show that she is responding to B's questions. In this context, it is usually pronounced in a high voice.

In the conversation above, notice that the listener, B, is not silent. He asks questions. He also encourages A to continue by making noises like *uh huh* and *mmm*. Listen again, and notice that he makes these noises in a low-pitched voice. He does this to show that he does not want to speak, he wants A to continue speaking.
Exercises

45.1 Listen and answer the questions. Listen for the word *anyway*, because the important information comes *after* it. Before it, the speaker is just giving background information.

**Example**
What did the speaker see on the way home from work? ____________ *He saw an accident.*

1 What happened to Katy the other day? ______________________________________________________________________

2 What did the old man do in the bar? ______________________________________________________________________

3 What is the good news about Clara? ______________________________________________________________________

45.2 Fill the gaps with the words *well* or *anyway*. Then listen and check.

A: I wonder what happens if you lose your passport.

B: I lost mine once.

A: So what happened?

B: ____________ (1), I was abroad, just travelling around, you know, and ____________ (2), somebody stole my bag on the last day.

A: So what did you do?

B: ____________ (3), I reported it to the police, which took absolutely ages – so many forms to fill in, and ____________ (4), they gave me a special travel document and then when I arrived home ...

Follow up: Listen to the conversation again and say B’s lines.
I mean, it's sort of like ... Understanding small talk

Listen to this conversation. Note that the expressions in black do not really have any meaning; you could easily understand the text without them.

Notice that the speakers say them very fast, often in a low voice: they are 'throw away' words, i.e. you could throw them away and the meaning wouldn't change.

A: Ugh! This coffee is really horrible!
B: Yeah, I know. Machine coffee, I mean, why do we drink the stuff?
A: It's sort of like ... someone puts the contents of an ashtray in water and ehm ... like, heats it up or something, you know ...
B: Yeah, that's what it tastes like, ... and ... I mean, have you tried the ehm ... the tea?
A: Oh yeah, the tea! That's even worse!
B: I mean the plastic cups don't help, do they?
A: No, I know, ... plastic cups! ... We like even had champagne in plastic cups, you know, at what's-her-name's leaving party ...
B: Jenny. Jenny Glen. Yeah, I remember that, last January it was ...
I kind of liked Jenny. I wonder what she's doing now ...

Different people often have their own favourite 'throw away' words. For example, in the conversation above, A says like and you know a lot and B says I mean a lot.

Note: When you are listening, you don't need to understand every word. Often, the things people say really fast are just 'throw away' words, and you can ignore them.

The same expressions which people use as 'throw away' words do have meaning in other contexts. In all the sentences on the left below, the expressions in black have meaning. In the sentences on the right, they are 'throw away' words.

Listen and notice the difference in pronunciation: the 'throw away' words are said faster and in a low voice.

Tell me everything you know. She tells me everything, you know.
'Blue Mountain' is a kind of coffee. 'Blue Mountain' coffee is kind of nice.
We like to go away at weekends. We like go to the beach or whatever.
I mean the one on the right. I mean, what's the point of buying one shoe?!
Exercises

46.1 You will hear someone speaking about the weather in Montana (in the USA) with a lot of 'throw away' words. Write what the person says, but miss out the 'throw away' words.

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________

46.2 You will hear four people speaking. What are their favourite 'throw away' words? Write them after the name.

Speaker 1: Frank  I mean
Speaker 2: Debbie
Speaker 3: Kimberly
Speaker 4: Greg

46.3 Underline the 'throw away' words in this text. There are nine more expressions to underline.

We don’t like have coffee breaks, I mean we just like get a coffee or tea and sort of like take it back to our desks, you know, but it’s kind of dangerous ‘cause, I mean, people sometimes like knock the drink over the computer, you know.

Follow up: Read the text aloud, saying the underlined expressions fast and in a low voice. Record yourself if possible.

46.4 Listen to these sentences. Is the expression in italics ‘throw away’ (said fast and in a low voice) or not? If it is ‘throw away’, underline it. Note that the punctuation is not written, so you must decide from the pronunciation.

1 I don’t think these are the men you know
2 I’ve taught you everything you know
3 Do you know the place I mean it’s just over there
4 She’s not the one I mean she’s too tall
5 They’re like wild animals
6 This is like Arctic weather
When listening to instructions, listen for the signals right, now and OK, which tell you that you are moving on to the next step. In the conversation below, B is giving A instructions on how to do something on a computer. B uses the words right, now and OK to signal that she is starting a new step in the instructions. Listen and notice that these words (in black below) are said in an emphatic voice.

A: How do you copy bits of text off a document?
B: Right, well first you have to ehm ... select the bit of text you want, you know, just click and drag with the mouse ...
A: Oh, so it’s just click and drag?
B: Yeah, and the bit of text comes up in a different colour, yeah?
A: Uh huh, a different colour ...
B: Now, click ‘Edit’ and choose ‘Copy’ ...
A: Edit ... Copy ... OK ...
B: OK, and finally, open your document and click ‘Paste’!
A: Open document ... Paste ... Oh, I see.

The words right, now and OK are used in other contexts, apart from as a signal to the next step. In these other contexts, they are often not pronounced so strongly. Listen and compare the difference.

Close the box ... that’s right. Right, now you can close the whole program. I think we’re on line now. Now, type the address in the box at the top. Now look at the whole page and see if it looks OK. OK, now you can print!

Listen again to this line from the conversation in A. Notice that the speaker pronounces Oh in a high voice.

Open document ... Paste ... Oh, I see.

The speaker uses the word Oh to signal that he has learnt something new.
47.1 Listen to the instructions and complete this picture. First you will hear instructions to draw the line and square below. Then you will hear more details to add.

47.2 Listen to the instructions for 47.1 again and write a number each time you hear one of the words right, now, OK. Write the numbers at the start of each line below. Then write the instruction after each number.

1. Take a piece of paper and a pen.
2. Draw a line across the page.

Follow up: Give the instructions, but don’t say the numbers, say right, now or OK instead. Record yourself if possible.

47.3 Listen to these instructions. Is the expression in italics a signal to a new step in the instructions (said in a high voice) or not? If it is a signal, underline it. Note that the punctuation is not written, so you must decide from the pronunciation.

EXAMPLE Click on that icon now the program is opening right now start a new document

1. Check that everything looks right and then send it
2. Click here so you get a new page OK and now write the title at the top
3. Make sure you save that OK and now close the program
4. You will see the icon on the right of your screen
5. Open the program right and now start a new document
6. I think it’s ready now you can switch it on
'Like father like son' as they say

Quoting speech

A: I said to Terry, I said, 'Can you open the door for me?' and he says, 'Open it yourself!' Can you believe it!
B: I know. That boy's so rude! I said to his father, I said, 'You should do something about that boy,' and do you know what he said to me? He said, 'It's none of your business.'
A: Oh, he's just as bad as Terry. 'Like father like son' as they say!

B: The speakers show the quotes by putting a short pause before and after. Also, their voice is higher on the quotes. Listen to recording C34 again.

'Can you open the door for me?' I said, and he says, 'Open it yourself!' 'Like father like son' as they say.

C: Listen and compare these lines. Notice how you can hear the quote marks (').

Do you know what he said to me?
'Do you know what?' he said to me.
I said to his father, 'I said you should do something.'
I said to his father, I said, 'You should do something.'

D: Listen to this story. Notice that we may pronounce quote marks for written words or thoughts, not just speech.

Question one was 'What's the capital of Australia?' 'This is easy,' I thought, so I wrote 'Sydney.' Then when I got home I looked in a book. 'Australia' it said, 'Capital: Canberra.' 'Oh no,' I thought. 'Failed again!'
Exercises

48.1 Listen. Which do you hear first and which second? Write 1 or 2 after each sentence.

EXAMPLE  a  ‘You’re an idiot, that’s what,’ she said.  2_
  b  ‘You’re an idiot’, that’s what she said.   1_

1 a  What she said was good.  5 a  I don’t know what I thought.  
  b  What she said was ‘Good!’  6 b  ‘I don’t know what,’ I thought.  

2 a  He said, ‘Linda was married.’  6 a  She says, ‘What she thinks is right.’  
  b  He said Linda was married.  7 b  She says what she thinks is right.  

3 a  That’s the thing she said.  7 a  ‘Who?’ wrote Julius Caesar.  
  b  ‘That’s the thing,’ she said. 

4 a  He wrote a letter to the president.  8 a  Who said ‘Martin’?  
  b  He wrote ‘A letter to the president’.  8 b  ‘Who?’ said Martin.  

Follow up: Record yourself saying one of the sentences, a or b, for each number. Make a note of which one you chose. Then listen to your recording again in about two weeks and try to do this exercise with it.

48.2 This speaker is telling some gossip. Put the quote marks (‘ ’) in the text. (Don’t worry about other punctuation or capitals.) Then listen and check your answers. Then try saying it yourself.

So I say to Claire ‘where’s David, Claire?’ and she says oh, he’s staying at home to do his homework, and of course I thought oh no he’s not! because I saw him, you see, going into the café with Lorraine and I said hi David! and he went completely red, and Lorraine said we’re doing a school project together, and I thought oh yes, I know what kind of project that is!
He will win
Introduction to emphatic stress

Short sentences have a typical sentence stress, or rhythm. (See Unit 23.) For example:

He won't win! oO (The sentence has three syllables, and there is stress on the second and third.)

He'll win! oO (The sentence has two syllables and there is stress on the second.)

But in conversation, speakers can choose to put the stress in any place. This is like underlining words in writing: we do this to put emphasis on words. Here are the same two examples from A again, but this time they are in the context of a short conversation. Notice the way the speakers 'underline' some words.

A: He'll win, you know.
B: He won't win!
A: He will win!

In this example, the speakers do not agree with each other. B 'underlines' won't to show that he is saying the opposite of what A said. Then A 'underlines' will for the same reason. Note that the written form also changes, from 'll to will.

To 'underline' a word, a speaker does one or more of these things: a makes it louder, b makes it longer, c makes it higher. Listen to this conversation. It shows the 'underlining' very clearly.

A: He won't win.
B: Who won't?
A: He won't.
B: He will win.
A: He won't win.
B: He will!
A: He won't!
B: I hope he wins.
A: I hope he loses.
B: He won't lose.
A: He will lose.
B: You're wrong!
A: You're wrong!
B: He's won!
A: Who's won?
B: He's won!
A: Oh no!

We emphasise words for example when we want to make a contrast with what the other person says, or correct some wrong information. (Units 50 to 53 give more detail on this.)
Exercises

49.1 Write three different ways to disagree with each of A's sentences, and underline the words you would put emphasis on. Then listen, check and repeat.

**Example**

A: I'll win.
B: No, I'll win. (opposite subject)
B: You won't win. (negative)
B: No, you'll lose. (word with opposite meaning)

1

A: I finished first.
B: No, you didn't. (negative)
B: No, you. (word with opposite meaning)

2

A: You're stupid!
B: I'm. (negative)
B: No, I'm. (word with opposite meaning)

49.2 Read this conversation. Guess which words the speakers will 'underline' for emphasis and underline them in the text. You are told which lines have no underlining. Then listen and check.

A: I won't pass. (no underline)
B: You will pass.
A: You'll pass.
B: I don't know. (no underline)
A: You won't fail.
B: I might fail.
A: I will fail.
B: The exam's not hard. (no underline)
A: It's very hard.
B: But not too hard.
A: Too hard for me.
B: But you're very clever! (no underline)
A: You're the clever one.
B: Yes, I suppose you're right. (no underline)

Follow up: Listen to the conversation again and repeat B's lines. Remember to 'pronounce the underlining'.
Listen to the way the speaker ‘underlines’ certain words in this text.

My name’s Schwartz ... Pedro Schwartz.
I’m from Chile ... the South of Chile.
I live in Puerto Montt ... well, near Puerto Montt.
Actually, I live on an island ... an island called Chiloé.
My grandparents were German ... well, Swiss-German, in fact.

In the first line, both phrases contain the name Schwartz. In the first phrase, the speaker ‘underlines’ this word because it is new information. But in the second phrase, he doesn’t, because now it is old information. The new information in the second phrase is Pedro, so the speaker ‘underlines’ this.

NEW

My name’s Schwartz ... Pedro Schwartz.

OLD

There is a similar pattern in each of the other examples above.

Above, the same speaker gives information and then adds new details. But in a conversation, one speaker can give information and the other can add new details. In both cases, the speaker ‘underlines’ the added detail. Listen to this example.

A: I hear you’ve got a boat.
B: A small boat, yes.
A: And a big house.
B: Well, it’s quite big, I suppose.
B: Well, near Hollywood, yes.
A: So you must be rich then?
B: Well, quite rich I guess.

Listen to these two short conversations. A’s question shows that she doesn’t know anything about where B comes from. C’s question shows that she knows he comes from India, so when B says South India, he ‘underlines’ South because this is added information.

A: Where are you from?
B: South India.

C: Which part of India are you from?
B: South India.
Exercises

50.1 Use the words from the box to add details to the sentences below. Underline the added detail. Say your sentences out loud.

**EXAMPLE**
It's a radio ...  a car radio

1 It's cold ...  4 It's in Asia ...
2 It's a bag ...  5 He's a composer ...
3 My name's Bond ...

50.2 Listen and underline the words which B ‘underlines’ with her voice.

A: It's very quiet.
B: Too quiet.
A: I think something's wrong.
B: Very wrong.
A: I don't like it.
B: I don't like it at all.
A: Let's get out of here.
B: Let's get out fast!

Follow up: Listen again and repeat B's lines.

50.3 The answers to the pairs of questions a and b below are the same, but the speaker puts stress on a different word in each answer. For example, in the answer to Example a, the speaker puts stress on the word ‘Vettori’ but in b, she puts stress on the word ‘Clara’. Read the other questions and underline the words the speaker will put stress on. Then listen and check.

**EXAMPLE**
a What’s your name?
Clara Vettori.

1 a Do you live in Milan?
Near Milan, yes.
2 a What do you do?
I'm a graphic designer.
3 a Do you have your own home?
Yes, a very nice flat.
4 a What do you do in the evenings?
Well, I'm learning French.
5 a Do you know London?
Yes, I lived there for a year.
6 a Do you have any brothers or sisters?
Yes, two brothers.
7 a What kind of music do you like?
I like jazz and classical.

b What’s your full name, Ms Vettori?
Clara Vettori.

1 b Do you live near Milan?
Near Milan, yes.
2 b What kind of designer are you?
I'm a graphic designer.
3 b Do you have a nice flat?
Yes, a very nice flat.
4 b Do you speak French?
Well, I'm learning French.
5 b You lived in London, didn’t you?
Yes, I lived there for a year.
6 b You have some brothers, don’t you?
Yes, two brothers.
7 b Which do you prefer, jazz or classical?
I like jazz and classical.

Follow up: Play the recording again and repeat the answers.
I think you're in my seat
Emphasising important words

A
C47 Listen to this conversation. Notice that the speakers ‘underline’ the words which are most important in their argument.

A: Excuse me, I think you’re in my seat.
B: Sorry, but it says 7A on my boarding card.
A: Oh, er ... right ... I asked for a window seat, you see ...
B: Yeah, so did I. What’s your seat number?
A: Let’s see ... Oh, it’s 8A.
B: So I guess you’re in the seat behind me.
A: Oh yes. Sorry about that.

B
C48 Listen to this conversation. Notice how the speaker ‘underlines’ a different word in her second request. In the first request, what is important is what the passenger must do. In the second request, it is when he should do it.

A: I’m sorry, but you must switch that off, sir.
B: OK, just a minute.
A: Switch it off now, please!

C
C49 The word which is more important depends on the context. Listen to these sentences. Notice that the speaker ‘underlines’ different words in the different contexts.

Sentence
Could I have a glass of water too, please?
Could I have a glass of water too, please?
You have to check in at five.
You have to check in at five.

Context
A passenger asked the stewardess for a tomato juice and wants water too.
A passenger asked for water and now the next passenger is asking for the same.
A travel agent is telling a customer the check-in time.
You are talking to your friend who is worried because she thinks her flight is at five and she could miss it.
Exercises

51.1 In each of these conversations, A has to repeat the request, but 'underlining' a different word. Which word? Underline one word in the third line of each conversation. Then listen and check.

**Example**
A: Can I have a donut?
B: What do we say, Benny?
A: Can I have a donut, please?

1 A: A black coffee, please.
B: Sorry, do you want milk with your coffee?
A: No, a black coffee please.

2 A: What's your nationality?
B: Well, my wife's an American citizen.
A: Yes, but what's your nationality, sir?

3 A: What time is it?
B: Well, the clocks changed last night …
A: So what time is it then?

Follow up: Listen again and repeat A's lines.

51.2 The sentences in the contexts a and b below are the same, but with different pronunciation. You will hear each sentence twice, once for context a and once for context b. Listen and decide which you hear first, context a or context b. Write 1 and 2 in the boxes.

**Example**

a I think that's my bag.  
She's not completely sure that it's her bag.

b I think that's my bag.  
Another person is picking up her bag.

1 a Is that your phone?  
He can hear an electronic sound from someone's pocket.

b Is that your phone?  
He can see somebody's mobile phone on the seat.

2 a Is your seat 29 F?  
She is not sure she heard the number correctly.

b Is your seat 29 F?  
She is not sure she heard the letter correctly.

3 a Is there a bank in this terminal?  
He knows there is a bank in the other terminal but not if there is one in this terminal.

b Is there a bank in this terminal?  
He is looking for a bank.

4 a Where's the women's toilet?  
She is looking for the toilet.

b Where's the men's toilet?  
She can see the men's toilet, but not the women's.

Follow up: Record yourself saying the sentence for context a or b. Make a note of which one you choose. Then use your recording to do the exercise again in about two weeks.

Now go to Unit 12
Chips or salad?
Emphasising contrasting alternatives

A When we present alternatives, we ‘underline’ the contrast between them. Listen to this example. Notice the way the speaker ‘underlines’ the alternatives.

A: I’d like a hamburger, please.
B: Do you want a super burger or a regular burger?
A: What’s the difference?
B: Well, the super comes with chips and the regular comes without chips.

B The same sentence can be pronounced differently, depending on the sentence that came before it. Listen to these examples. Notice how B ‘underlines’ in a different place depending on what A said.

A: You can pay by credit card. B: I haven’t got a credit card.
A: Why are you paying in cash? B: I haven’t got a credit card.
A: Shall we sit inside or outside? B: Let’s sit outside.
A: Where shall we sit? B: Let’s sit outside.

Note: In the second example above, it is not a different word which is underlined; it is a different part of the same word outside.

C The word we choose to ‘underline’ can change the meaning of our sentence. Listen to these sentences pronounced in two different ways and see the different meanings in the pictures.

Do you want the hamburger with chips, or salad?

Do you want the hamburger with chips or salad?

Would you like chicken with vegetables, or Russian salad?

Would you like chicken with vegetables or Russian salad?

Note: In writing, the pause may be indicated by a comma.
Exercises

52.1   Read the short conversations. Which words do you think B will ‘underline’? Underline them in the texts below. Then listen and check.

1 A: I’d like a salad, please.
   B: A mixed salad or a Greek salad?
   A: What’s the difference?
   B: Well, a mixed salad has tuna and a Greek salad has cheese.

2 A: I’d like to stay two nights, please.
   B: Do you want full board or half board?
   A: What’s the difference?
   B: Full board includes all meals and half board includes just breakfast and dinner.

3 A: We’d like a room for two, please.
   B: Would you like a standard or deluxe?
   A: What’s the difference?
   B: Standard has a mountain view and deluxe has a sea view.

Follow up: Play the recording again and repeat B’s lines.

52.2   Listen. You will hear only the answers. Which do you hear first, a or b? Write 1 and 2 in the boxes.

**EXAMPLE**

a – Would you like a starter?
   – I’ll have a mixed salad, please. [ ]
   b – What kind of salad would you like?
   – I’ll have a mixed salad, please. [ ]

1   a – What time do you close?
   – We’re closing now, sorry. [ ]
   b – A table for two please.
   – We’re closing now, sorry. [ ]

2   a – Would you like anything to drink?
   – I’d like red wine, please. [ ]
   b – Would you like red or white?
   – I’d like red wine, please. [ ]

52.3   Listen. Which choice is the waiter offering first: picture a or b? Write a – b or b – a.

1 Would you like peaches or strawberries with cream?
   a
   b

2 Would you like tea with lemon or milk?
   a
   b

3 Would you like sausage or bacon and eggs?
   a
   b

Now go to Unit 13
When we hear an error and we correct it, we ‘underline’ the correct information. Listen to this conversation. Notice how Sid ‘underlines’ the words which Joe has heard incorrectly.

SID: Let’s meet up tonight.
Joe: OK. When and where?
SID: How about the Blues Café?
Joe: The Mews Café? Don’t like that place …
SID: No, the Blues Café. In Rawton Street.
Joe: Where’s Lawton Street?
SID: Not Lawton Street, Rawton Street, you know …
Joe: Ah yes, OK. What time?
SID: How about nine fifteen.
Joe: Five fifteen? That’s too early.
SID: No, nine fifteen. What’s wrong with your ears today?!

If only a part of a word or phrase is not heard correctly, we ‘underline’ only that part when we correct. Listen to these examples.

A: My nephew’s fifteen.
B: Thirteen?
A: No, fifteen!

A: You must be more careful!
B: Careless?
A: No, careful!

A: Her room is really untidy.
B: Tidy?
A: No, untidy!

A: I saw a blackbird in the garden.
B: A blackboard?
A: No, a blackbird!

A: The Amazon’s the longest river in the world.
B: Oh, I thought the Nile was the longest river.

In the first four examples you heard, the mistake was that B did not hear correctly. But we can also use extra stress when correcting other kinds of mistakes, for example, if the information is wrong, as in the last example you heard.
53.1 Read this phone conversation. Notice the words which are 'underlined' by A and decide whether B says phrase a or phrase b. Circle the correct answer. Then listen and check.

A: Hello Joe, I'm coming to visit next month.
EXAMPLE B: You're coming a this month? b next week?
A: No, next month. Can you meet me? I'll be on the evening plane.

1 B: On the a morning plane? b evening train?
A: No no. On the evening plane. On Sunday the third.

2 B: On a Sunday the first? b Monday the third?
A: No no, Sunday the third. At nine fifteen.

3 B: At a five fifteen? b nine fifty?
A: No no, nine fifteen. You'll know it's me. I'll have a blue jacket.

4 B: A a new jacket? b blue packet?
A: No no, a blue jacket. See you there. Bye.

Follow up: Record yourself saying A's lines and use your recording to do the exercise again in about two weeks.

53.2 Read these short conversations. Which syllable do you think the speaker will stress in the third line? Underline it.

EXAMPLE A: I disagree with you.
B: You agree?
A: No, I disagree!

1 A: He's in the bathroom.
B: In the bedroom?
A: No, the bathroom!

2 A: My father's retired.
B: Why is he tired?
A: No, he's retired!

3 A: I bought a bookshelf.
B: A bookshop?
A: No, a bookshelf!

4 A: But that's impossible!
B: You think it's possible?
A: No, I said impossible!

5 A: The kitchen's downstairs.
B: Upstairs?
A: No, downstairs!

Follow up: Listen. You will hear the first two lines and then a pause before the third line. Say the third line with the stress you underlined. Then listen and check if you were right.
Look who's talking!
Introducing tones

Some idiomatic expressions have a fixed melody, or tone, in English. For example, in Look who's talking, the voice goes down at the end. The syllable *talk* is higher than the syllable *-ing*. In You'll be lucky, the voice goes up at the end. The syllable *luck* is lower than the syllable *-y*. Listen.

![Diagram with illustrations of speech and tone]

But normally we can choose to make our voice go up or down at the end. For example, in the conversation below, Sid says 'bear' with his voice going down. Joe repeats the word with his voice going up. Listen and notice the way their voices go up or down at the end.

Sid: Shh!
Joe: What?
Sid: Bear!
Joe: Bear?
Sid: Bear!
Joe: Where?
Sid: There!
Joe: Far?
Sid: No!
Joe: Near?
Sid: Yeah!
Joe: Run?
Sid: Run!

Listen again and say Joe's lines.

⚠️ Note: The choice of tone (voice going up or down) has meaning. We will look at the meaning in Units 55 to 60.

⚠️ Note: The meanings of the idiomatic expressions in this unit are explained in the Answer Key on page 186.
54.1  Listen to these short conversations. All of the replies are idiomatic expressions. Listen. Does the voice go up or down on the last word? Draw a line in the box: or

1 Would you like to hold it? You must be joking! 
2 I never eat caviar, too salty. Chance would be a fine thing!
3 Next! 
4 This soup isn’t very hot. Give me a break!

Go for it.

Follow up: Listen again and repeat.

54.2  The responses to the pairs of sentences a and b below are the same, but the speaker uses a different tone. For example, in the response to Example a, the voice goes down, but in the response to Example b, the voice goes up. Listen and draw a line in the box to show if the voice goes up or down.

EXAMPLE

a Let’s go away for the weekend. 
b Let’s go to Llantisiliogogogoch. 

a I know who stole your glasses. 
b It was Mickey Mumpkin. 

a I’ve got some bad news for you. 
b I’m afraid your house has burnt down. 

a Excuse me, can you help us? 
b Can you take a photo of us with this camera? 

a We’re going for a picnic if you want to come. 
b At midnight tonight. 

- Where? 
- Where? 
- Who? 
- Who? 
- What? 
- What! 
- Yes? 
- Yes. 
- When? 
- When?

54.3  You will hear just the responses from 54.2. Listen and decide if it is the response to a or b.

EXAMPLE  b  1  2  3  4  

English Pronunciation in Use 117
Questions can be pronounced with the voice going up at the end or going down at the end. You can hear the difference in this conversation. Two people are fixing a place to meet. Listen to the way A pronounces his three questions.

A: Where?  (A's voice goes down at the end.)
B: Here.
A: Where?  (A's voice goes up at the end.)
B: Here.
A: Here?  (A's voice goes up at the end.)
B: Yes, here.

A's first question is an 'open' question. The answer could be any place; he has no idea. A's questions 2 and 3 are 'check' questions. He thinks he knows the answer and he just wants to check. The voice usually goes down at the end of 'open' questions and up at the end of 'check' questions.

Here is another example. A is asking directions to B's house. Notice how both of them use 'check' questions [in black] to make sure they understand each other. Listen.

A: Help! We're lost!
B: Where are you?
A: I don't know. There's a supermarket and a river.
B: Oh, I think I know where you are ... Can you see a bridge?
A: Yes.
B: OK, well go across the bridge and turn right.
A: Turn right?
B: Uh huh. Now, can you see some trees on the left?
A: Yes.
B: Turn left after the trees.
A: What, in front of the bar?
B: Yes, in front of the bar. You'll see my house on the left.
A: It's opposite the farm?
B: That's it. Well done, you're here!

Note: In the sentence It's opposite the farm? we know the speaker is asking a question from the context. Also, the voice going up at the end makes it sound like a question.
Exercises

55.1 Read these short conversations and tick (√) the questions. Then listen and check.

1 A: When?
   B: Tomorrow.
   A: When?
   B: Tomorrow.
   A: Tomorrow?
   B: Yes, tomorrow.

2 A: Which way?
   B: Left.
   A: What?
   B: Left.
   A: In front of the shop?
   B: Yes.

Follow up: Listen and repeat A's lines.

55.2 Listen. You will hear one half of a conversation on a mobile phone. You can tell which way the speaker is going from the check questions. Draw the route on the map.

55.3 Listen to the phrases or sentences. Do they sound like questions? Write (?) after the questions and (.) after the ones that are not questions.

EXAMPLE
Go straight across (.

1 Right at the lights (?)
2 Next to the supermarket (?)
3 It's this one (?)
4 It's opposite the school (?)
5 It's a long way (?)
6 Under the bridge (?)
7 Take the next left (?)
Where were you born?
Tones in asking for information

We pronounce an ‘open’ question differently from a ‘check’ question. An ‘open’ question is where we ask for information we didn’t have before, and the voice usually goes down at the end. A ‘check’ question is where we make sure that the information we have is correct. The voice usually goes up at the end. Listen to the examples in this conversation.

A: What’s your name?
B: Sonia.
A: And where were you born?
B: Surinam.
A: Is that in South America?
B: Yes, that’s right.
A: And how long have you lived here?
B: Five years.
A: I see. Are you married?
B: No, I’m not.
A: And what do you do?
B: I’m a boxer.
A: You’re a boxer?

Listen to A’s second question in recording C72 again. The voice starts going down in the last word only, because this is the word the speaker is emphasising, or ‘underlining’.

Where were you born?

But we may ‘underline’ any of the words (see Units 49 to 53). Listen. Notice that the voice movement begins at the word with the underlining and continues to the end.

So your parents were born in Uruguay. And where were you born?

Oh, so you weren’t born here? Where were you born?

So you were born in 1969? And where were you born?

I know your parents live here, but were they born here?

I know you were born here, but were your parents born here?

My mother and father were born here. Were your parents born here?

⚠️ Note: In check questions the voice sometimes goes down before it goes up at the end. This is shown in the lines in the boxes.
Exercises

56.1 Listen to the questions below. Are they open or check? Draw a down or an up line in the boxes.

**EXAMPLE**
Are you a student?

1 Have you been to America?  
2 What do you study?  
3 What time is it?  
4 Are you over eighteen?  
5 Can you drive?  
6 Where's he going?  
7 Do you like it?

56.2 Listen. After each sentence below, there is a question. Which word in the question does the speaker 'underline' with his voice? **Underline** the word. Then draw the voice movement line, starting in the box below the underlined word. The voice goes down in all of them.

**EXAMPLE**
I'm from Canada.  **Where are you from?**

1 So you're from Cuba.  **Where in Cuba?**

2 From Havana? Interesting.  **And what's your name?**

3 So you don't live in Cuba now?  **Where do you live?**

4 You're a student?  **What do you study?**

5 So you won't finish this year?  **When will you finish?**

**Follow up:** Listen again and repeat.

56.3 Look at the questions in black below. **Underline** the word you think the speaker will emphasise. Then listen and check.

**EXAMPLE**

a So your sister's a teacher?  **Where does she work?**

b Oh, so she doesn't work here?  **Where does she work?**

1 a So you're married?  **Do you have any children?**

b I have two daughters.  **Do you have any children?**

2 a So French is your second language?  **What's your first language?**

b My first language is Urdu.  **What's your first language?**

3 a So you work Mondays to Saturdays?  **What do you do on Sundays?**

b So your favourite day is Sunday?  **What do you do on Sundays?**

4 a I know how he did it, but ...  **why did he do it?**

b She was going to do it, so ...  **why did he do it?**

5 a My glasses aren't here, so ...  **where are my glasses?**

b Here are your glasses, but ...  **where are my glasses?**
We're closed tomorrow
Tones in new and old information

In conversation, we often refer back to something we said before. This is 'old' information, and the voice normally goes up at the end. We also tell the listener things we haven't mentioned before. This is 'new' information, and the voice normally goes down at the end.

Listen. In conversation 1 below, the voice goes up at the end, because the last word 'tomorrow' has already been mentioned. In conversation 2, the voice goes down, because the last word 'tomorrow' has not been mentioned.

1 A: I'll come in tomorrow.
   B: We're closed tomorrow.

2 A: When are you closed?
   B: We're closed tomorrow.

Listen to this example. They are talking about buying a television. Notice how the voice goes up on the words in black. This is because these are words which have been mentioned before, so they are old information.

A: Let's get the Viewmaster. It's really nice.
B: But the Megavision is nicer.
A: But the Viewmaster has a guarantee.
B: They both have a guarantee.
A: Anyway, the Megavision is too expensive.
B: I know it's expensive, but it's better quality.
A: They're both good quality.
B: The Megavision has access to the internet.
A: We have access to the internet on the computer.

When we are referring to something before in the conversation, we don't have to repeat exactly the same words. In this conversation, the voice goes up on 'from there' because in this context it means 'Cairo', so it is something which has been mentioned before.

A: I'm from Cairo.
B: Really? My wife's from there.
Exercises

57.1 Read the short conversations. Do you think the voice goes up or down at the end?
Draw lines in the boxes. Then listen, check and repeat.

EXAMPLES
A: This one’s nice.
B: I know it’s nice, but it’s expensive.
A: This one’s big.
B: I know it’s big, but the other one’s bigger.

1 A: This one’s slow.
B: I know it’s slow, but it’s strong.

2 A: This one’s ugly.
B: I know it’s ugly, but it’s comfortable.

3 A: This one’s good.
B: I know it’s good, but the other one’s better.

4 A: This one’s fast.
B: I know it’s fast, but it’s dangerous.

57.2 The responses to the pairs of sentences a and b below are the same, but the speaker uses a different tone in each response. For example, in the response to Example a, the voice goes up at the end of the sentence, but in the response to Example b, the voice goes down. Draw lines to show if you think the voice will go up or down. Then listen and check.

EXAMPLE
a – The train’s cheap.
– The bus was cheaper.
1 a – Was the movie good?
– The book was better.
2 a – What time’s lunch?
– Lunch is at two.
3 a – I’d like a leather one.
– They’re all leather.
4 a – Let’s go tomorrow.
– It’s closed tomorrow.
5 a – Where’s menswear?
– Menswear is upstairs.
6 a – The fish is expensive.
– The steak’s more expensive.
7 a – What happens if one of them breaks?
– They all have a guarantee.

b – Why did you take the bus?
– The bus was cheaper.
1 b – Why did you read the book?
– The book was better.
2 b – Let’s go swimming at two.
– Lunch is at two.
3 b – Why are they so expensive?
– They’re all leather.
4 b – When is it closed?
– It’s closed tomorrow.
5 b – What’s upstairs?
– Menswear is upstairs.
6 b – Why didn’t you have steak?
– The steak’s more expensive.
7 b – This one has a guarantee.
– They all have a guarantee.
Oh, really?
Continuing or finishing tones

When we are telling someone a piece of news, we often check that they know the background to the story first. When we do this, the voice goes up at the end. Then, when we finally tell the news, the voice goes down at the end. This shows that we have finished the story.

Listen and compare A’s first question in these two conversations. In 1, he is checking that B knows about Max’s grandfather’s death, so the voice goes up. In 2, he is telling B the news that Max’s grandfather died, so the voice goes down.

1 A: You know Max’s grandfather died?   
   B: Yes.    
   A: Well, he’s left all his money to charity.    

2 A: You know Max’s grandfather died?   
   B: Oh.    
   A: Yeah, terrible, isn’t it?

Listeners also signal if they expect the story to continue or not. In conversation 1 above, B’s voice goes up at the end when she says Yes. This shows that she expects A to continue. In conversation 2, B’s voice goes down at the end when she says Oh. This shows that she knows A has finished telling her the news. There are more examples in the conversation below. Listen.

A: You know Angela?   
   B: Yes.    
   A: And you know her brother David? 
   B: Uh huh.    
   A: Well, you know he lives in Southside?  
   B: Mmm ...  
   A: Well, somebody broke into his house last night! 
   B: Oh, really!?

⚠️ Note: In B’s last line, her voice goes down, but it starts from very high. This shows that she did not expect this news; she is surprised.

If we are saying a list of things, our voice goes down at the end of the last thing to show we have finished. On the other things, the voice goes up to show the list is not finished. Listen to the continuation of the conversation from B above, and notice A’s pronunciation of the list of things stolen.

B: Did they steal anything?  
   A: Yes, they took his computer, television, video, CD player and all his CDs.
   B: Oh, that’s terrible!
Exercises

58.1 Listen to these sentences. If they are said as news ( ), write Oh. If they are said as check questions ( ), write Yes.

Examples You know Bradford won? ______ Oh ______
You know Sylvia's had a baby? ______ Yes ______

1 You know I'm a photographer? ______
2 You know Danny's got flu? ______
3 You know she's gone? ______
4 You know he broke his arm? ______
5 You know the war's finished? ______
6 You know the meeting is cancelled? ______

58.2 You will hear a story. The speaker on the recording will ask questions to check that you know some background information, which is in the text below. Say Yes, Uh huh or Mmm ... with your voice going up at the end. Then, when finally you hear the news, respond with one of these sentences:

How fantastic!
That's great!
Oh, that's terrible!
Brilliant!

Background information
You and the speaker on the recording have a friend called Colin. Colin has a sister called Linda. Linda is an actress in the movies. She was making a movie in Australia recently.

58.3 Read these conversations. Write (I) after really if you think B would be surprised at A's news, and just write (.) if you think B would not be surprised. Then listen and check. You know if B is surprised because the voice starts very high.

Example
A: There's a lot of water in the sea.
B: Oh, really ______

1 A: My husband is an astronaut.
B: Oh, really ______

2 A: My bike has two wheels.
B: Oh, really ______

3 A: My grandmother is 130.
B: Oh, really ______

4 A: There's a programme on TV tonight.
B: Oh, really ______

58.4 What did you do yesterday? Answer this question by giving a list of your actions. Make sure your voice goes up at the end of each action until the last one, then your voice goes down. Record yourself if possible.

Example
Well, I got up, had breakfast, went to work ... and finally, I went to bed.
It's fun, isn't it? Agreeing and disagreeing tones

When we agree with the other person, our voice often goes down at the end. We tell the other person our opinion, confident they will not be upset.

Listen to this conversation. Notice that the voices go down at the end of each line.

A: Football's so boring, isn't it?
B: Yeah, I know. I hate it.
A: I mean, it's just 22 people running after a ball.
B: Yeah, how can that be interesting?
A: No, golf's much more fun, isn't it?

⚠️ Note: The expression *isn't it?* is called a question tag. When we use question tags to tell someone our opinion, the voice goes down at the end.

But when we disagree, our voice often goes up at the end, so our opinion sounds unfinished and less strong, because we do not want to upset the other person.

Listen to the rest of the conversation from A. Notice how the voices go up at the end of each line.

B: Well...
A: You like golf, don't you?
B: It's alright I suppose...
A: You don't sound very sure.
B: Well, I guess I'm not really a sporting person, you know.

⚠️ Note: The expression *don't you?* is a question tag. When we use question tags to check information, the voice goes up at the end.

We can say the same sentence, but change the meaning by changing how we say it.

Listen to these two examples. The speaker in 1 is telling his opinion clearly. The speaker in 2 is leaving something unsaid. You feel he is going to continue with *but*..

1. I think they're good. (That is my opinion.)
2. I think they're good ... (They're not too bad, but there's a reason why I don't like them.)

We can also change the meaning of a question tag by changing how we say it. Listen to these conversations.

A: It's too hot, isn't it? (opinion)
B: Yeah, let's open the window!
A: We sometimes have snow in Morocco.
B: But it's too hot, isn't it? (check question)
A: No, not in the mountains.
Exercises

59.1 Listen. Are these the speakers' real opinions, or can you 'hear' a but? Write a (. ) or ( , but...) after each line.

EXAMPLE  I like tennis but....
1 It's nice
2 We're quite good
3 Yes, it is
4 I don't know
5 Yes

6 He does
7 She likes you
8 They're friendly
9 Not bad

Follow up: Record yourself saying these sentences. Use your recording to do this exercise again in about two weeks.

59.2 Listen to the four short conversations about the things in the pictures. Are the speakers agreeing or disagreeing? Write agreeing or disagreeing under each picture.

EXAMPLE

agreement

59.3 Complete each sentence with an ending from the box. Then decide if they are opinions or check questions and draw lines in the boxes. Then listen and check.

is it?  isn't it?  is she?  isn't he?  are you?  aren't they?  was it?
wasn't he?  don't you?  doesn't it?  have you?

EXAMPLE  You aren't hungry, are you?
1 How's your headache? It isn't getting worse,
2 Those flowers are lovely,
3 You haven't seen my glasses anywhere,
4 Torsen's a great player,
5 I'm not sure. He was from Brazil,
6 I can't quite remember. You need 40 points to win,
7 Tennis is so boring,
8 She isn't a very good swimmer,
9 I'm not sure. It starts at nine,
10 It wasn't a very interesting game,

Now go to Unit 20
It was brilliant!
High tones

Listen to these three people saying thank you. Notice that the woman who forgot her bag makes her voice go very high. This shows that she really means what she is saying. The other two people do not really mean it, and so their voices do not go high.

Note: Sometimes the ticket collector's voice goes up at the end when he says thank you, which makes it sound like a routine habit: he doesn't really mean it. And of course the woman in picture 3 doesn't really mean thank you. She means the opposite!

When we give an opinion about something with a very strong adjective like excellent, our voice usually goes high to show our strong feeling. If we use weaker adjectives like nice, our voice does not usually go high. Listen and compare the voices of the man and woman telling their friend about their holiday.

Liz: So, how was your trip?  
Claire: Oh, it was quite nice.  
Paul: What do you mean, nice? It was brilliant!  
Liz: Good hotel?  
Claire: Quite pleasant, yes.  
Paul: Pleasant? It was excellent! Superb!  
Liz: How about the food?  
Claire: It was OK.  
Paul: OK? It was absolutely delicious!  
Liz: And the scenery?  
Claire: Quite pretty.  
Paul: It was amazing! Beautiful!

People often say a strong adjective like brilliant with a flat voice, to mean the opposite. For example, you could say brilliant with a flat voice after something bad happens. Listen and compare the pronunciation of this word in these two conversations. In the first one, the person really means it, and in the second she doesn't.

1 A: We've won a holiday for two in Jamaica!  
   B: Brilliant!  

2 A: Our flight has been cancelled!  
   B: Brilliant!

Note: If you use strong adjectives, make your voice go high or people may think you do not mean it!
Exercises

60.1 Listen. What do Sue and Jim think about the people they are speaking about? Write the names in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>people they like</th>
<th>people they don't like</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jeremy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUE: Jeremy is going to stay at the same hotel as us.
JIM: Oh great!
JIM: Anne's invited us to a party.
SUE: Fantastic!
JIM: Kathleen's coming to stay with us for a few days.
SUE: That'll be fun!
SUE: Gail and Tim want to come on holiday with us.
JIM: That'll be nice!

60.2 You will hear Claire (from part B on the opposite page) giving her opinion about these things on their holiday. Imagine you are Paul. Listen and say stronger opinions. There are gaps on the recording for you to speak. Don’t forget to make your voice high.

**EXAMPLE:**
You hear Claire say *The beach was quite nice.* You say *Nice? It was absolutely fantastic!*

60.3 The responses to the pairs of sentences a and b below are the same, but the speaker pronounces them differently. For example, in the response to Example a, the voice is flat, but in the response to Example b, the voice goes high. Draw lines to show if you think the voice will be flat or go high. Then listen and check.

**EXAMPLE**

a – We had to stay in a five-star hotel.
   – How awful for you! →

1 a – Forget the beach; it's raining again!
   – Brilliant!

2 a – I got an A in the exam!
   – Well done!

3 a – I can count to three in German.
   – Amazing!

4 a – We could pick fresh fruit off the trees in the garden.
   – Delicious!

5 a – Frank says he'll take us to the airport.
   – Excellent!

b – We had to spend two days in the airport.
   – How awful for you! ↘

1 b – They say we don’t have to pay; it’s free.
   – Brilliant!

2 b – I’ve crashed the car again!
   – Well done!

3 b – I learnt how to fly a plane while we were on holiday.
   – Amazing!

4 b – We had a tiny bit of cheese on a dry, old piece of bread.
   – Delicious!

5 b – The car’s broken down and there are no taxis.
   – Excellent!
# Introduction to phonemic symbols

## The phonemic alphabet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Image</th>
<th>Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/æ/</td>
<td>apple</td>
<td>apple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/e/</td>
<td>egg</td>
<td>egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/i/</td>
<td>insect</td>
<td>insect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/o/</td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʌ/</td>
<td>umbrella</td>
<td>umbrella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/oʊ/</td>
<td>book</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/aː/</td>
<td>arm</td>
<td>arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɜː/</td>
<td>earth</td>
<td>earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʊː/</td>
<td>organ</td>
<td>organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔː/</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/eə/</td>
<td>aeroplane</td>
<td>aeroplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɪə/</td>
<td>ear</td>
<td>ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ai/</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td>eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ei/</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔɪ/</td>
<td>coin</td>
<td>coin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/oʊ/</td>
<td>oval</td>
<td>oval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/au/</td>
<td>owl</td>
<td>owl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ə/</td>
<td>banana</td>
<td>banana</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Image</th>
<th>Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/b/</td>
<td>bird</td>
<td>bird</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʃ/</td>
<td>chair</td>
<td>chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>dog</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>fish</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/g/</td>
<td>girl</td>
<td>girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/h/</td>
<td>heart</td>
<td>heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/dʒ/</td>
<td>jar</td>
<td>jar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>key</td>
<td>key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>leaf</td>
<td>leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/m/</td>
<td>monkey</td>
<td>monkey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/r/</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/p/</td>
<td>pear</td>
<td>pear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/r/</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>rose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>sofa</td>
<td>sofa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʃ/</td>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>television</td>
<td>television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>table</td>
<td>table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔ/</td>
<td>mother</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ə/</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʌ/</td>
<td>volcano</td>
<td>volcano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/w/</td>
<td>web</td>
<td>web</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/j/</td>
<td>yacht</td>
<td>yacht</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/z/</td>
<td>zebra</td>
<td>zebra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

Phonemic spellings which are the same as normal spellings

D1.1 In each of these groups of words, one word is exactly the same as in normal letters. Underline it. Then write the others in normal letters.

**EXAMPLE** Furniture: /'tɛbəl .bed. 'sɑufə tʃeə/

| table | sofa | chair |

1 For writing: /'pensəl 'peɪpər pen 'nɔutbuk/ |

2 In the office: /desk fæks kəm'pjuːtə 'tɛlɪfəʊn/ |

3 Body parts: /nek hed hænd leg/ |

4 Farm animals: /hen pɪg fɪʃ caʊ/ |

5 Colours: /ɡrɪn blu: rɛd blæk/ |

6 Verbs: /ɡet tɛk ɡɪv gæʊ/ |

7 Numbers: /'sezən ten ɔri: faɪv/ |

Phonemic spellings which are very different from normal spellings

D1.2 Some phonemic spellings are surprisingly different from normal spellings. For example, in phonemic spelling, quick is /kwɪk/. Can you find all the words in this wordsearch? The words are horizontal → or vertical ↓. Use all the letters.

```
breathe               ocean
chair                question
edge                 quick
English              quite
future               school
juice                shoe
mixed                sixth
news                 though
precedented
```

*English Pronunciation in Use* 131
Phonemic symbols for vowels

D1.3 Complete these phonemic crosswords. The words in normal spelling are next to the crosswords. You need to write one of these consonant symbols in each empty square. You can use the symbols more than once.

/b d f g h k l m n p r t v w z/

1 Long vowel crossword

rain  bike  warm  boot
late  leave  five  room
woke  born  bean  phone
2 Short vowel crossword
hat put æ lip gone
fun pet pack get look
cot cup

3 Vowels before R crossword
port hairs bears brs
heard card beard heart
hers court
phonemic consonants which are different from normal consonants

D1.4 Here is a list of different activities. In each one, one of the words is written with phonemic symbols. Write it in normal letters. Use the table to help you.

Example

/wɔtʃɪŋ/ ___________ television
1 ski /dʒʌmpɪŋ/ ______________
2 /wɔʧɪŋ/ ______________ the dishes
3 /juəzɪŋ/ ______________ a computer
4 sun /beɪdɪŋ/ ______________
5 /sɪŋɪŋ/ ______________ songs
6 /ˈʃəʊkɪŋ/ ______________ about something
7 /ˈpleɪɪŋ/ ______________ games

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phonemic symbol</th>
<th>usual spelling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ʃ</td>
<td>SH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dʒ</td>
<td>G or J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʃ</td>
<td>CH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θ</td>
<td>NG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>Y or U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θ</td>
<td>TH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʌ</td>
<td>TH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

D1.5 Put these words in the correct square in the table. Do not write in the shaded squares.

boy here share shy she toy beer hair high he bore
pier bear buy be pour tea tie pair deer pea we die
pie dare door fear four wear why fair wore tear

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ɪt</th>
<th>ɪt</th>
<th>ɪt</th>
<th>ɪt</th>
<th>ɪt</th>
<th>ɪt</th>
<th>ɪt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td>here</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʃ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
D1.6 Find phonemic spellings for thirteen different foods in the wordsearch. The words are horizontal → or vertical ↓. Use all the letters.

D1.7 Find phonemic spellings for thirteen jobs in the wordsearch. The words are horizontal → or vertical ↓. Use all the letters.
Here is a word square making the words can, cap, not and pot.

Here is a phonemic word square making the words beach, bean, cheese and knees.

Now complete these word squares to make the four words underneath each one.

1. rhyme might tight write

2. laws cause tall talk

3. shop wash what top

4. cut come touch much

5. back tap cap bat

6. could bush should book

7. pain page jail nail

8. yes sell tell yet

9. wrote roll loan tone
Pronunciation test

Section A  Letters and sounds

A1  Circle the word with a different vowel sound.

EXAMPLE  hot (hold)  gone  swan

1  black  want  mad  hand
2  case  lake  name  care
3  soap  hope  sold  soup
4  what  hot  most  salt

My score = ____/7

A2  Circle the word if one of the consonant letters is not pronounced.

EXAMPLE  camp  crisp (climb)  cost

1  lamb  label  cable  cab
2  recipe  repeat  receipt  rope
3  listen  winter  eaten  after
4  hour  hate  home  hill

My score = ____/7

A3  Add the consonant sound to the word to make another word.

EXAMPLE  /g/ + eight = gate

1  /k/ + aim = ...........................
2  /k/ + ache = ...........................
3  /l/ + eight = ...........................
4  /r/ + owes = ...........................
5  /w/ + eight = ...........................
6  /s/ + eyes = ...........................
7  /h/ + eye = ...........................
8  /b/ + air = ...........................
9  /b/ + earn = ...........................

My score = ____/9 × 2 = ____/18

A4  Listen and circle the word you hear.

1  Have you got a pan / pin / pen I could borrow?
2  We should clean the cut / cat / cot first.
3  You won’t be able to fill / feel / fail this.
4  I think that’s the west / worst / waist.
5  The cot / coat / court’s too small.
6  I don’t think it’s far / fur / fair, you know.
7  What time did the woman / women arrive?
8  The officer’s / office’s here.
9  I used to have a bet / vet / pet.

10  I got a good price / prize for it.
11  They didn’t suit / shoot him.
12  I think it’s in the code / coat / coach.
13  That’s a fine / wine / vine colour.
14  His back / bag was broken.
15  You can smell it in the air / hair.
16  You’ll have to watch / wash the baby.
17  They’re singing / sinking.
18  I’ll collect / correct / connect it tomorrow.

My score = ____/18

Total score for Section A = ____/50
Section B Syllables, words and sentences

B1 Listen and circle the word you hear.

1 The glass / gas is green.
2 The tooth / truth is out!
3 I can't sell / smell anything.
4 They need / needed more time.
5 I think they want / wanted to talk.
6 There are thirty / thirteen people in my class.
7 Alice is / was here.

My score = ___/14

B2 Which word has a different number of syllables from the others? Circle it.

EXAMPLE snakes sheep foxes cats

1 likes wants talks washes
2 wanted walked saved brushed
3 chicken chocolate afternoon different
4 about around asleep asked
5 fourteen forty fortieth hundred
6 builds rebuild builder building
7 supermarket waterfall holiday hairdresser
8 school texts over sports

My score = ___/8

B3 All the words or expressions in each group have the same number of syllables. Circle the one with stress in a different place.

EXAMPLE October November December January

1 Saturday holiday tomorrow yesterday
2 morning fifty fifteen August
3 He told me. I like it. She finished. Close the door.
4 Go to bed! Don’t worry! What’s the time? Fish and chips.
5 table tourist tunnel today
6 mistake famous become remove
7 playground shoe shop first class handbag
8 economics economy education scientific
9 It isn’t true. I’ll see you soon. No, it isn’t. He’s not at home.

My score = ___/9 × 2 = ___/18
Listen. Are the two expressions pronounced exactly the same on the recording, or is there a difference? Write S for same or D for different.

**EXAMPLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>some of you</th>
<th>summer view</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>stopped aching</td>
<td>stop taking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Mary knows</td>
<td>Mary’s nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Alaska</td>
<td>I’ll ask her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>burnt a cake</td>
<td>burnt the cake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>greet guests</td>
<td>Greek guests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>want to talk</td>
<td>wanted to talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>I’ve locked it</td>
<td>I blocked it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>what’s past</td>
<td>what’s passed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>a bitter fruit</td>
<td>a bit of fruit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

My score = ____/10

Total score for Section B = ____/50

---

**Section C  Conversation**

Listen. Which sentence do you hear? Tick (✓) a or b.

**EXAMPLE**

a  Was that the question he asked? ✓
b  'Was that the question?' he asked.

1 a  We walked carefully downstairs. It was dark.
b  We walked carefully. Downstairs it was dark.

2 a  I saw her clearly. She was hungry.
b  I saw her. Clearly, she was hungry.

3 a  The word he said was right.
b  The word he said was ‘right’.

4 a  It was cold last night. The roads were icy.
b  It was cold. Last night, the roads were icy.

5 a  ‘Who?’ said Martin.
b  Who said ‘Martin’?

6 a  What she said was good.
b  What she said was, ‘Good’.

7 a  Let’s go home later. We can have a pizza.
b  Let’s go home. Later we can have a pizza.

My score = ____/7
C2 Example

Listen. You will only hear the response. Which one is it? Tick (√) a or b.

**Example**

a – The train leaves at eleven fifteen.
   – No it doesn’t, it leaves at twelve fifteen.

b – The train leaves at twelve fifty.
   – No it doesn’t, it leaves at twelve fifteen. ✓

1 a – Where are you from?
   – North Africa.

b – Which part of Africa are you from?
   – North Africa.

2 a – Do you have any brothers or sisters?
   – Yes, two brothers.

b – You have some brothers, don’t you?
   – Yes, two brothers.

3 a – Would you like anything to drink?
   – I’d like red wine, please.

b – Would you like red or white?
   – I’d like red wine, please.

4 a – Malaga’s in the south of Italy.
   – No it isn’t, it’s in the south of Spain.

b – Malaga’s in the north of Spain.
   – No it isn’t, it’s in the south of Spain.

5 a – Let’s go tomorrow.
   – It’s closed tomorrow.

b – When is it closed?
   – It’s closed tomorrow.

6 a – What’s upstairs?
   – Menswear is upstairs.

b – Where’s menswear?
   – Menswear is upstairs.

7 a – We had to stay in a five-star hotel.
   – How awful for you!

b – We spent two days in the airport.
   – How awful for you!

8 a – I got an A in the exam!
   – Well done!

b – I’ve crashed the car again.
   – Well done!

My score = _____/8

C3 Listen. How does the speaker sound? Circle the best alternative. Note that the punctuation is not written, so you must decide just from the pronunciation.

**Example**

Nice day isn’t it

1 She plays a lot of instruments piano guitar
2 Well that is truly amazing
3 You’re coming here tomorrow
4 Oh, thank you very much
5 Next to the supermarket
6 I got up had a shower and got dressed
7 Oh really how interesting
8 You’re from Brazil aren’t you
9 I think that’s my bag
10 Yes it’s quite good

The speaker sounds as if hel/she...

... is / isn’t asking a question
... is / isn’t going to continue the list.
... is / isn’t really amazed.
... does / doesn’t really mean it.
... is / isn’t asking a question.
... is / isn’t going to continue the list.
... is / isn’t really interested.
... is / isn’t asking a question.
... is / isn’t sure about it.
... is / isn’t going to say ‘but...’

My score = _____/10

Total score for Section C = _____/25 × 2 = _____/50
Guide for speakers of specific languages

Note: It has not been possible to include all languages in this section.

Arabic
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
2, 4, 5, 14, 18, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
4, 13, 14, 23, 28, 35, 36, 37, 40, 41, 44, 45, 46, 48

Chinese
From section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
14, 19, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 2, 3, 10, 14, 15, 19, 23, 28, 31, 33, 34, 35, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 43, 44, 45, 46, 50

Dravidian languages e.g. Tamil
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
6, 10, 11, 12
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
3, 10, 12, 14, 17, 19, 23, 28, 30, 31, 34, 35, 40, 45, 48

Dutch
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
15, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 7, 10, 13, 15, 17, 19, 20, 26, 31, 32, 33, 34, 37, 38, 39, 40, 44, 45

Farsi
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 12
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 9, 10, 12, 14, 19, 23, 24, 25, 35, 38, 48

French
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, 14, 15, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 2, 3, 4, 10, 15, 17, 19, 21, 28, 31, 33, 34, 35, 37, 39, 40, 41, 44, 45

German
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
11, 15, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 5, 15, 17, 28, 31, 33, 34, 37, 38, 39, 40
Greek
From Section A *Letters and sounds* (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
5, 8, 9, 13, 17, 20
From Section D *Sound pairs*, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 2, 3, 8, 10, 11, 12, 14, 17, 19, 23, 31, 32, 41, 44, 46, 47, 48

Italian
From Section A *Letters and sounds* (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
6, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 19
From Section D *Sound pairs*, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 2, 4, 10, 14, 17, 23, 28, 31, 34, 35, 37, 40, 45

Japanese
From Section A *Letters and sounds* (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
3, 6, 12, 20
From Section D *Sound pairs*, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
2, 6, 9, 17, 24, 25, 27, 29, 32, 33, 36, 43, 46, 48, 49, 50

Korean
From Section A *Letters and sounds* (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
10, 15, 20
From Section D *Sound pairs*, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 9, 10, 12, 14, 17, 19, 23, 26, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 40, 45, 46, 50

Malay / Indonesian
From Section A *Letters and sounds* (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
13, 15, 16, 20
From Section D *Sound pairs*, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 10, 19, 23, 28, 30, 31, 32, 34, 35, 37, 40, 44, 45

Polish
From Section A *Letters and sounds* (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
8, 18
From Section D *Sound pairs*, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 3, 10, 17, 26, 28, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 39, 40, 41, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48

Portuguese
From Section A *Letters and sounds* (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
8, 20
From Section D *Sound pairs*, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 2, 3, 8, 10, 19, 23, 28, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 40, 46, 48, 49

Russian
From Section A *Letters and sounds* (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
4, 8, 11, 15, 20
From Section D *Sound pairs*, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 3, 10, 12, 14, 17, 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 32, 33, 34, 38, 40, 41, 46, 47, 48
Scandinavian languages
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
6, 8, 15, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 10, 15, 16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 38, 39, 42, 45, 46

South Asian languages e.g. Hindi, Urdu, Bengali, Gujarati
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
15, 18
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 4, 7, 17, 22, 28, 30, 32, 34, 35, 38, 40, 45, 46, 47

Spanish
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
17, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
2, 3, 9, 10, 12, 14, 19, 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49

Swahili
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
4, 8, 15, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 2, 3, 4, 9, 10, 13, 14, 17, 19, 21, 23, 28, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 45, 50

Thai
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
3, 6, 10, 11, 15, 18, 19
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
3, 5, 6, 17, 30, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 38, 40, 45, 50

Turkish
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
4, 9, 16
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 5, 11, 17, 19, 28, 34, 35, 38, 45, 47, 48, 49

West African languages
From Section A Letters and sounds (Units 1–20), you could leave out these units:
8, 10, 11, 12, 20
From Section D Sound pairs, it would probably be useful for you to do these sound pairs:
1, 2, 3, 9, 10, 12, 14, 17, 19, 22, 23, 28, 31, 34, 35, 37, 40, 45, 48, 50
Sound pairs

If you have problems in hearing the difference between individual sounds in Section A of the book, you will be directed to one of the exercises in this section.

or

Look in D3 Guide for speakers of specific languages, find the sound pairs recommended for speakers of your language, and do these.

In order to remember which sound pairs you have done, put a tick in the boxes. If you have completed it but you still find it difficult, tick ‘visited’. If you are sure you know it, tick ‘understood’. If you have recorded yourself saying the words correctly, tick ‘recorded’.

Sound pair 1: /æ/ and /e/

For more on these sounds, see Units 2, 6.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8  bad / bed
9  dad / dead
10  sat / set
11  marry / marry
12  Talk to the man / men.

Sound pair 2: /æ/ and /ʌ/

For more on these sounds, see Units 2, 18.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8  fan / fun
9  cap / cup
10  rang / rung
11  She’s got a cat / cut on her arm.
12  He’s sung / He sang in public.
Sound pair 3: /æ/ and /a:/

For more on these sounds, see Units 2, 14.

Listen to the words in the box.

(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, these are not minimal pairs.)

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 ______ 2 ______ 3 ______ 4 ______ 5 ______ 6 ______ 7 ______

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 cat / cart
9 match / March
10 had a / harder problem
11 He always packs / parks slowly.
12 She put her hand on her hat / heart.

Sound pair 4: /ei/ and /e/

For more on these sounds, see Units 2, 6.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 ______ 2 ______ 3 ______ 4 ______ 5 ______ 6 ______ 7 ______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 gate / get
9 paper / pepper
10 waste / west
11 What would happen if we fail / fell?
12 I've got a pain / pen in my hand.

Sound pair 5: /ei/ and /eə/

For more on these sounds, see Units 2, 14.

Listen to the words in the box.

(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, these are not minimal pairs.)

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 ______ 2 ______ 3 ______ 4 ______ 5 ______ 6 ______ 7 ______

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 they / their
9 stays / stairs
10 hey / hair
11 I don't want to pay / a pear.
12 There's no way / nowhere to go.
Sound pair 6: /eə/ and /aɪ/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 14.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 _______ 2 _______ 3 _______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 fare / far
9 bare / bar
10 cares / cars
11 I don’t think it’s fair / far.
12 We slept under the stairs / stars.

Sound pair 7: /aɪ/ and /əɪ/

For more on these sounds, see Units 14, 19.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 _______ 2 _______ 3 _______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 farm / form
9 park / pork
10 There are thousands of stars / stores.
11 You can visit any part / port.
12 I don’t think it’s far / four.

Sound pair 8: /eə/ and /ɪə/

For more on these sounds, see Units 6, 14.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 _______ 2 _______ 3 _______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 where / we’re
9 dare / dear
10 chairs / cheers
11 hair / hear
12 There’s something in the air / ear.
Sound pair 9: /ʌ/ and /ɑː/

For more on these sounds, see Units 14, 18.

Listen to the words in the box.

(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, some of these are not minimal pairs.)

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 hut / heart
9 much / March
10 duck / dark
11 cut / cart
12 Try to come / calm down.

Sound pair 10: /ɪ/ and /iː/

For more on these sounds, see Units 6, 11.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 chip / cheap
9 fit / feet
10 He doesn’t want to live / leave.
11 Can you fill / feel it?
12 Do you want to sit / a seat?

Sound pair 11: /iː/ and /ɪə/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 6.

Listen to the words in the box.

(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, these are not minimal pairs.)

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 we / we’re
9 knee / near
10 pea / pier
11 feed / feared
12 Who is be / here?
Sound pair 12: /e/ and /æ:/
For more on these sounds, see Units 6, 19.
Listen to the words in the box.
(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, these are not minimal pairs.)
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Listen. Circle the word you hear.
8 ten / turn
9 lend / learned
10 Jenny / journey
11 That’s a nice bed / bird.
12 This is the west / worst side.

Sound pair 13: /ɪ/ and /e/
For more on these sounds, see Units 6, 11.
Listen to the words in the box.
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Listen. Circle the word you hear.
8 miss / mess
9 bill / bell
10 will / well
11 Who dropped the litter / letter?
12 You should take the lift / left.

Sound pair 14: /ɒ/ and /əʊ/
For more on these sounds, see Unit 16.
Listen to the words in the box.
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Listen. Circle the word you hear.
8 not / note
9 rob / robe
10 goat / got
11 They want / won’t sleep.
12 The cost / coast is clear.
Sound pair 15: /ɒ/ and /ʌ/

For more on these sounds, see Units 16, 18.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 _______ 2 _______ 3 _______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 not / nut
9 lock / luck
10 They shot / shut the door.
11 This shirt has a horrible collar / colour.
12 Did you see they’re gone / their gun?

Sound pair 16: /əʊ/ and /əʊ/ 

For more on these sounds, see Units 16, 18.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 _______ 2 _______ 3 _______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 soap / soup
9 rule / roll
10 There’s water in my boat / boot.
11 He went to the north pool / pole.
12 We grow / grew strawberries.

Sound pair 17: /ɔː/ and /ɔɪ/

For more on these sounds, see Units 16, 19.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 _______ 2 _______ 3 _______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 so / saw
9 low / law
10 coal / call
11 It’s a new bowl / ball.
12 I woke / walk in the morning.
Sound pair 18: /əʊ/ and /au/

For more on these sounds, see Units 16, 20.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1       2       3       4       5       6       7       

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 know / now
9 blows / blouse
10 It isn’t a load / allowed.
11 I don’t want to show her / a shower.
12 Tim phoned / found her.

Sound pair 19: /ʊ/ and /uː/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 18.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1       2       3       4       5       6       7       

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 Luke / look
9 full / fool
10 pull / pool
11 Should I? / shoe dye
12 The butcher / boots you saw.

Sound pair 20: /ʌ/ and /uː/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 18.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1       2       3       4       

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

5 bucks / books
6 luck / look
Sound pair 21: /ʌ/ and /ɔː/

_For more on these sounds, see Units 18, 19._

Listen to the words in the box.

(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, some of these are not minimal pairs.)

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 _but_ /Bert_
9 _but_ /hurt_
10 _under_ /heard a_
11 _suffer_ /surfer_
12 _It looks like the butcher’s_ _shut_ /shirt._

Sound pair 22: /ʌ/ and /e/

_For more on these sounds, see Units 6, 18._

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 _but_ /bet_
9 _study_ /steady_
10 _won_ /when_
11 _He shot a gun_ /again._
12 _This one’s_ _butter_ /better._

Sound pair 23: /ɔː/ and /ɒ/

_For more on these sounds, see Units 16, 19._

Listen to the words in the box.

(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, some of these are not minimal pairs.)

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 _short_ /shot_
9 _order_ /oddier_
10 _sport_ /spot_
11 _water ski_ /what a ski_
12 _There’s coffee in the_ _port_ /pot._
Sound pair 24: /ɜ:/ and /əʊ/

For more on these sounds, see Units 6, 19.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 bird / heard
9 were / we’re
10 fur / fear
11 I can’t see if it’s her / here.
12 He has a black bird / beard.

Sound pair 25: /ɜ:/ and /eə/

For more on these sounds, see Units 14, 19.

Listen to the words in the box.

(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, some of these are not minimal pairs.)

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 were / where
9 stir / stair
10 bird / bared
11 I can’t see if it’s her / hair.
12 It isn’t fur / fair.

Sound pair 26: /ɜ:/ and /ɔ:/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 19.

Listen to the words in the box.

(Note: In accents where the R is pronounced, some of these are not minimal pairs.)

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 bird / bored
9 sir / saw
10 shirt / short
11 You weren’t first / forced to do it.
12 We worked / walked all day.
Sound pair 27: /ə/ and /ə/:

For more on these sounds, see Units 14, 19.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).


Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 fur / far
9 hurt / heart
10 further / father
11 The question wasn’t heard / hard.
12 She owned a firm / farm.

Sound pair 28: /b/ and /p/:

For more on these sounds, see Unit 3.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).


Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 bill / pill
9 bush / push
10 The soldiers lay on their backs / packs.
11 They tied the robe / rope round his neck.
12 There’s a bear / pear in that tree.

Sound pair 29: /b/ and /v/:

For more on these sounds, see Units 3, 8.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box. If you hear the same word twice, write S (same). If you hear two different words, write D (different).


Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 bet / vet
9 They’ve ached / They baked all day.
10 summer beach / some of each
11 Say ‘boil’ / Save oil.
12 I brushed it / I’ve rushed it.
Sound pair 30: /p/ and /f/
For more on these sounds, see Units 3, 8.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 __________ 2 __________ 3 __________ 4 __________ 5 __________ 6 __________ 7 __________

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 pool / fool
9 pine / fine
10 He was driving past / fast.
11 a nicer pear / a nice affair
12 a change of pace / face

Sound pair 31: /s/ and /z/
For more on these sounds, see Unit 4.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 __________ 2 __________ 3 __________ 4 __________ 5 __________ 6 __________ 7 __________

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 ice / eyes
9 sip / zip
10 They race / raise horses here.
11 What's wrong with your niece / knees today?
12 I just want some peace / peas please.

Sound pair 32: /s/ and /ʃ/ (not shown in text)
For more on these sounds, see Units 4, 12.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 __________ 2 __________ 3 __________ 4 __________ 5 __________ 6 __________ 7 __________

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 sign / shine
9 mass / mash
10 I didn't save / shave for years.
11 They didn't suit / shoot him.
12 They sat on the seat / sheet.
Sound pairs 33: /s/ and /θ/, /z/ and /ð/

For more on these sounds, see Units 4, 17.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 sing / thing
9 breeze / breathe
10 That’s a funny sort / thought.
11 Her mouse / mouth seems to be smiling.
12 Are they closed / clothed yet?

Sound pair 34: /d/ and /t/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 5.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 said / set
9 down / town
10 I forgot the code / coat.
11 It’s a very wide / white beach.
12 She started riding / writing young.

Sound pairs 35: /t/ and /θ/, /d/ and /ð/

For more on these sounds, see Units 5, 17.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 tree / three
9 day / they
10 I don’t want your tanks / thanks!
11 That’s what I taught / thought!
12 They couldn’t breed / breathe very well.
Sound pairs 36: /t/ and /θ/; /d/ and /ð/  
For more on these sounds, see Units 5, 12.
Listen to the words in the box.
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.  
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).  
If you hear two different words, write D (different).  

1       2       3       4       5       6       7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 taught / torch
9 aid / age
10 It’s a tropical beat / beach.
11 He took the coat / coach all the way to London.
12 It went over my head / hedge into the next garden.

Sound pair 37: /ʃ/ and /v/  
For more on these sounds, see Unit 8.
Listen to the words in the box.
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.  
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).  
If you hear two different words, write D (different).  

1       2       3       4       5       6       7

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 that sofa / that’s over
9 This is where we lift / lived.
10 That’s quite a few / few.
11 Ask your wife’s / wives’ friends.
12 a current affair / of air

Sound pair 38: /v/ and /w/  
For more on these sounds, see Units 8, 10.
Listen to the words in the box.
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.  
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).  
If you hear two different words, write D (different).  

1       2       3       4       5       6       7

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 made of air / made aware
9 Which is verse / worse?
10 It’s next to the vine / wine.
11 It’s in the vest / west.
12 half a weight / half of eight
Sound pairs 39: /f/ and /θ/ /v/ and /ð/

For more on these sounds, see Units 8, 17.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.

8 first / thirst
9 I got these free / three gifts.
10 It’s a fort / thought.
11 What some of us / What’s a mother’s first thought.
12 I don’t know Eva / either.

Sound pair 40: /g/ and /k/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 9.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 The gap’s / cap’s too small.
9 His bag / back was broken.
10 Did you see the ghost / coast?
11 There was a guard / card by the door.
12 Is it gold / cold?

Sound pair 41: /h/ and /

For more on this sound, see Unit 10.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 hate / eight
9 heart / art
10 You can smell it in the hair / air.
11 She lost her hearing / earring.
12 They aren’t hearing / eating it properly.
Sound pair 42: /j/ and /dʒ/  
For more on these sounds, see Units 10, 12. 
Listen to the words in the box.  
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.  
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).  
If you hear two different words, write D (different).  
1  2  3  4  5  6  7  
Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.  
8 yet / jet  
9 until you lie / until July  
10 I don’t see the yoke / joke.  
11 Did you see yours / jaws?  
12 What’s the use / juice? 

Sound pairs 43: /h/ and /ʃ/, /h/ and /f/  
For more on these sounds, see Units 8, 10, 12. 
Listen to the words in the box.  
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.  
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).  
If you hear two different words, write D (different).  
1  2  3  4  5  6  7  
Listen. Circle the word you hear.  
8 I think the bolder’s / shoulder’s broken.  
9 You have to hold / fold it there.  
10 I can’t sleep with this heat / sheet.  
11 I don’t think it’s hair / fair.  
12 The boss hired / fired me. 

Sound pair 44: /ts/ and /ʃ/  
For more on these sounds, see Unit 12. 
Listen to the words in the box.  
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.  
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).  
If you hear two different words, write D (different).  
1  2  3  4  5  6  7  
Listen. Circle the word you hear.  
8 choose / shoes  
9 chair / share  
10 I tried to catch / cash the cheque.  
11 But there aren’t any chips / ships!  
12 You’ll have to watch / wash the baby.
Sound pair 45: /tʃ/ and /dʒ/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 12.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 ______ 2 _______ 3 ______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 chose / Joe's
9 cheap / jeep
10 I dreamt of enormous riches / ridges.
11 Hair-loss starts with H / age.
12 I don’t think it’s in tune / June.

Sound pairs 46: /ts/ and /ʃ/, /dz/ and /ʒ/

For more on these sounds, see Unit 12.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 _______ 2 _______ 3 ______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 arts / arch
9 aids / age
10 eats / each
11 Watch / What’s the time? / ?
12 They suffered the raids / rage of the bandits.

Sound pairs 47: /tr/ and /ʃ/, /dr/ and /ʒ/

For more on these sounds, see Units 12, 13.

Listen to the words in the box.

Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).

1 _______ 2 _______ 3 _______ 4 _______ 5 _______ 6 _______ 7 _______

Listen. Circle the word you hear.

8 trips / chips
9 drunk / junk
10 The train / chain isn’t moving.
11 There’s something in the trees / cheese.
12 It’s in the lower drawer / jaw.
Sound pair 48: /n/, /ŋ/ and /ŋk/
For more on these sounds, see Unit 15.
Listen to the words in the box.
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.
8 hand / handed
9 win / wing
10 Robin Banks / robbing banks
11 I ran / rang home yesterday.
12 They’re singing / sinking.

Sound pairs 49: /m/ and /n/, /m/ and /ŋ/
For more on these sounds, see Unit 15.
Listen to the words in the box.
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Listen. Circle the word or phrase you hear.
8 term / turn
9 mice / nice
10 The son warned / sun warmed me.
11 It’s mine / nine already!
12 You have to swim / swing to the left.

Sound pair 50: /l/ and /ɹ/
For more on these sounds, see Unit 13.
Listen to the words in the box.
Listen. The speaker will say two words from the box.
If you hear the same word twice, write S (same).
If you hear two different words, write D (different).
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
Listen. Circle the word you hear.
8 They played / prayed for the team.
9 It wasn’t long / wrong.
10 They glow / grow in the dark.
11 There were flies / fries all around my burger.
12 I’ll collect / correct it tomorrow.
You will speak more fluently if you say some very common expressions with a fixed pronunciation, like a single word. The expressions below are grouped according to their stress pattern.

Listen and repeat.

**000**
Good morning.
Good evening.
Excuse me!
How are you?
You're welcome.
I'd love to.

**000**
What's your name?
What's the time?
Thanks a lot.
Close the door.
Yes, of course.
Come and see!
Don't forget.

**0000**
A piece of cake.
The shop was closed.
It's time to go.
I spoke to John.
A cup of tea.

**0000**
See you later!
Just a moment.
Pleased to meet you.
Where's the station?

**00o**
No problem!
Don't worry.
Keep quiet!
Please help us.
Who told you?

**000**
How much is it?
How far is it?
What time is it?
What day was it?

**0000**
What do you do?
Where are you from?
Where do you live?
Where were you born?
When does it leave?
How do you do?
What do you want?

**0000**
Can you help me?
Do you like it?
Are you coming?
Was it raining?
There's a problem.

**00000**
Would you like a drink?
Do you want to come?
Is it time to go?
Is it far from home?
accent  An accent is the way the people of a place pronounce their language. For example, people in London and Sydney both speak English, but they have different accents.

auxiliary verb  An auxiliary verb is a verb which does not have a meaning by itself; it helps the grammar of the sentence. For example, in Do you like music?, do is an auxiliary verb.

C  In this book, the symbol C means consonant sound.

careful speech / fast speech  People pronounce sentences differently when they speak carefully. For example, you may use careful speech when you are talking in public or reading aloud. But in normal conversation you would use fast speech.

consonant sound  A consonant sound is a sound we make by obstructing the flow of air from the mouth.

contraction  A contraction is a short form of an auxiliary verb in writing. For example, are is contracted to re in they’re.

emphasising  Emphasising in speech is like underlining in writing; we use it to make one word stand out as more important than the others. We can emphasise words by pronouncing them louder, longer and/or higher.

minimal pair  If two words are pronounced nearly the same, but they have just one sound different, they are a minimal pair. For example, in the pair ship /ʃ Ip/ and sheep /ʃ Ip/, only the second sound is different.

native speaker  If you are a native speaker of a language, that language is your first language, the language which you learnt as a young child.

phonemic symbol  A phonemic symbol is a letter which represents a sound. For example, the first sound in shoe is represented by the phonemic symbol /ʃ/.

rhyme  Two words rhyme if they have the same final vowel or vowel and consonant sounds. For example, go rhymes with show and hat rhymes with cat.

sentence stress  Sentence stress is the pattern of strong and weak syllables in a sentence. For example, the sentence How do you do? is normally said with this sentence stress pattern: OooO (the first and last syllables strong, the second and third syllables weak).

sound  A sound is the minimum segment of the pronunciation of a word. For example, the word this has three sounds: /θ/, /h/ and /s/.

stress pattern  The pattern of strong and weak syllables in a word or sentence is its stress pattern. In this book, stress patterns are represented by big and small circles. For example, the stress pattern of the word pronunciation is oooOo.

syllable  A syllable is a word or part of a word that has one vowel sound. It may also have one or more consonant sounds. For example, ago has two syllables. The first syllable is just one vowel sound. The second syllable is a consonant sound followed by a vowel sound.
tone  A tone is the way your voice goes up or down when you say a sentence. This can change the meaning of the sentence.

unstressed  An unstressed syllable is one which is not pronounced strongly.

V  In this book, the symbol V means vowel sound.

voice  Many pairs of consonant sounds are similar, but one of them is voiced and the other is not. For example, /d/ is similar to /t/, but /d/ is voiced and /t/ is not. A consonant is voiced when there is vibration in the throat.

vowel sound  A vowel sound is a sound we make when we don't obstruct the air flow from the mouth in speaking.

weak vowels  Unstressed syllables often contain a weak vowel. The most common weak vowel is /ə/. This is the first vowel sound in about, for example. The vowel /ɜ/ is also sometimes weak, in the second syllable of orange, for example.

word stress  Word stress is the pattern of strong and weak syllables in a word. For example, the word decided has three syllables and the second one is pronounced more strongly. So decided has this word stress pattern: oOo.
1.1 Last week, I sent my son Jamie to the shops to buy some food. He got a piece of meat and two pears. On the way home, the bag broke. The food fell onto the road and got dirty. In the end, Jamie threw the food in the bin.

1.2 1 dog CVC  
2 rabbit CVCVC  
3 frog CCVC

1.3 1 Phil the fox A  
2 Mary the canary B  
3 Ida the spider B  
4 Claire the bear B

1.4 The answers depend on your own first language. See Section D3 for more information about this.

1.5 |

2.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/e/</th>
<th>/æ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cake</td>
<td>table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 1 eight, ate  
2 made, maid

2.3 1 salt  
2 far

2.4 1 man  
2 cap

3.1 SID: Where are the pears?
JOE: Bears?!? Did you say bears?
SID: No, pears, you know, fruit!
JOE: Oh, I see, pears with a P! They’re in the pack.
SID: What, in the back of the truck?
JOE: No, in the pack, you know, with a P!
SID: Oh, I see, pack with a P! Would you like one?
JOE: No, I’ll have a peach, please.
SID: A beach?!?!

3.2 1 cheap  
2 back  
3 pill  
4 pets  
5 speak

3.3 1 lamb  
2 climb  
3 cupboard  
4 photo  
5 receipt  
6 psychology  
7 combing

3.4 1 There’s a bear in that tree.  
2 He had the peach to himself.  
3 They’ve earned it.

4 Say ‘boil’.  
5 This is a nice affair.  
6 Would you like a coffee?
4.2  SID: Alice's nicely is nice.
JOE: Are nice, Sid. Plural. Her knees are nice.
SID: I'm not talking about her knees, I'm talking about her niece!
JOE: Oh, I see, niece with a C.
SID: That's right. She has nice eyes.
JOE: How can ice be nice? It's too cold.
SID: Not ice, you fool! Eyes: E-Y-E-S!

4.3  1 I'm not going to advise you, you never take my advice.
2 Your tooth is loose. You'll lose it if you're not careful.
3 The shop's very close to home, and it doesn't close till late.
4 I can't excuse people who drop litter. There's no excuse for it.

4.4  1 prize  2 he's at  3 suit  4 saved  5 think  6 clothed

5.1  There was a young lady called Kate,
Who always got out of bed late.
The first thing she said
When she lifted her head
Was 'I thought it was better to wait.'

There was a young waiter called Dwight,
Who didn't like being polite.
If you asked him for food,
He was terribly rude
And invited you out for a fight.

5.2  1 built, build  2 try, dry  3 sent, send  4 hurt, heard  5 white, wide  6 down, town

5.3  1 whistle  2 needed  3 listen  4 ended  5 soften
Note that where there are two Cs at the end of a verb in the past tense, the -ed is pronounced /t/, e.g. walked /wɔːkt/, liked /laɪkt/. See Unit 25.
Key

5.4 1 whiter  3 breeding  5 aid
     2 dry    4 taught   6 Watch

6.1 A B C D E F G H I J K L M
     ee ee ee ee e ee e
N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
     e ee e ee e ee e

6.2 1 cheek  3 beat    5 feel    7 wheel   9 feed
     2 read   4 mean    6 sweet   8 seat    10 lead

6.3 START

| leave | earth | health | reach | beach | meat |
| dream | dead  | cream  | shoes | steak  | cheat |
| east  | bread | tea    | death | heart  | peak |
| beach | break | peace  | search | leaf   | meant |
| send  | places| train  | early | beet   | bean |
| head  | bear  | wear   | dreamt| sweat  | clean |

FINISH

6.4 1 men    3 beer    5 bird
     2 pain   4 leave   6 left

7.1 pasta faster
Rita metre
daughter water

7.2 1 from Canada to China
     5 a question and an answer
     2 The parrot was asleep.
     6 a woman and her husband
     3 The cinema was open.
     7 a pasta salad
     4 the photographer’s assistant

7.3 vowel in weak syllable = /ə/

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>woman</th>
<th>collect</th>
<th>asleep</th>
<th>salad</th>
<th>letter</th>
<th>sofa</th>
<th>quarter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vowel in weak syllable = /ʌ/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>return</td>
<td>market</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td>visit</td>
<td>teaches</td>
<td>needed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4 1 women   3 manager’s  5 waiter’s  7 officer’s  9 drive
     2 address  4 teaches   6 dancer’s  8 away    10 races

8.1 1 3 2 4 4 5 4
SID: My wife's left me.
JOE: Your wives left you? How many wives did you have, Sid?
SID: One wife. And now she has left me.
JOE: Oh, I see, wife's with an F, not wives with a V!
SID: That's right! Yes, she took the van and drove off.
JOE: What did she want the fan for?
SID: I said van, you know, a kind of vehicle.
JOE: Oh, I see: van with a V, not fan with an F!

8.3

8.4
1 thief's
2 view
3 copy
4 vote
5 verse
6 free

9.1
1 up cup
2 aim game, came
3 ache cake
4 round ground, crowned
5 old gold, cold
6 lime climb
7 air care
8 all call
9 rate great, crate
10 ill kill

9.2
1 bigger
2 six
3 ache
4 rocks
5 queue

9.3
SID: Hey, there's the monster!
JOE: That's just a log.
SID: Yes, it's Loch Ness.
JOE: No, not Loch. I mean log, you know, from a tree!
SID: I've never seen a tree with a lock.
JOE: No, not a lock that you open with a key; a log with a G!

9.4
1 coast
2 glasses
3 bag
4 coat

10.1
1 worth
2 hear, year
3 your, wore
4 win
5 hate, weight, wait
6 wise
7 hall, wall
8 weighed
9 hill, will
10 heart
11 while
12 heat, wheat
13 wake
14 high, why
15 hold

10.2
1 under
2 whole
3 who
4 untie
5 honest
6 write
10.3 1 Your uniform used to be yellow. /j/
2 Haley's horse hurried ahead. /h/
3 This is a quiz with twenty quick questions. /w/
4 We went to work at quarter to twelve. /w/
5 New York University student's union. /j/
6 The hen hid behind the hen house. /h/
7 Which language would you like to work in? /w/

10.4 1 heart 3 vest 5 juice
2 earring 4 aware 6 sheet

11.1 | words with the vowel /aɪ/ | words with the vowel /ɪ/ |
---|---|---|
  wife wine wide light life line lime  |  will wish win mill fit fill fish tin sit  |
  mice mine mile mite night nice nine  |  sin quit  |
  fight fine file time  |  (and also ...)  |
  sight side site quite  |  wit lit nit fin till sill quill  |
  (and also ...)  |  |
  lice might mime Nile tight tile tide  |

11.2 A: Why did Jim hit Bill?  
B: Well, Jim's a guy who likes a fight.
A: But Bill's twice his size.
B: Yeah, that's why Jim got a black eye and a thick lip.
A: And Bill's got a big smile.
B: That's right.

11.3 1 might time 3 lip pill 5 pitch chip 7 dice side
2 lick kill 4 kiss sick 6 tick kit 8 lights style

11.4 1 live 2 feel 3 letter 4 lift

12.1 | contains /dʒ/ | contains /ʃ/ | contains /ʧ/ |
---|---|---|
  Belgian  |  Welsh  |  Dutch  |
  German  |  Russian  |  Chinese  |
  Japanese  |  Polish  |  Chilean  |
  |  Turkish  |  |
12.2  Sid: It's fish and chips for lunch, Joe!
JOE: Ships!? I can't eat ships, they're too big!
Sid: I said chips, you know, fried potatoes!
JOE: Oh, I see, chips with a CH, not ships with an SH.
Sid: That's right. You're a genius, Joe!
JOE: Was the fish expensive, Sid?
Sid: No, it was cheap.
JOE: Jeep!? You bought a Jeep?
Sid: No, cheap, the opposite of expensive.
JOE: Oh, I see, cheap with a CH, not jeep with a J!

12.3  1 which chair  4 stage joked
2 match cheers  5 catch chickens
3 watch chat  6 change jackets

12.4  1 watch  3 shave  5 What's
2 ridges  4 use  6 trees

13.1  1 late, rate  3 rare, lair  5 lend
2 rose, rows  4 learn  6 lie, rye  7 leg
8 reach

13.2  I worked late that day and I didn't arrive home until 10 o'clock. I was very wet because of the rain. Then, to my surprise, my key didn't fit in the lock. So I looked closely at my keys and saw that they were the wrong ones. I had left my house keys at work. So I got back on my motorbike and rode back to the office to collect them. I got home really tired, so I went to bed, read for half an hour, switched off the light and went to sleep.

13.3  1 court  2 folk  3 hair  4 should  5 artist

13.4  1 supplies  2 correct  3 flight  4 cheese  5 drawer

14.1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>words with the vowel /æ/</th>
<th>words with the vowel /ɛə/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bar far dart star start car card cart</td>
<td>bare rare dare fair stair square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calm half hard chart</td>
<td>care hair chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(and also...) bard balm fart calf hart char</td>
<td>(and also...) fare stare hare</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2  Sid: This is a great life, with no worries or cares!
JOE: It would be nice if we had cars though, Sid.
Sid: I didn't say cars, I said cares!
JOE: Oh, I see. Not cars, as in traffic, but cares with an ES at the end!
Sid: That's right. I've always loved sleeping under the stars.
JOE: But why? There's hardly any space under the stairs!
Sid: No, not stairs, stars! You know, little lights in the sky.
JOE: Oh, stars! I thought you said stairs, that people walk up!
15.3  
Sid: Hey, Joe, your coat is very worn.
Joe: No, it isn’t warm. I always feel cold in this coat.
Sid: No, not warm! I said worn, with an N!
Joe: Oh, worn with an N!
Sid: Yes, the cloth is thin.
Joe: What do you mean “the cloth is thing”?  
Sid: No, thin with an N at the end, not thing with a G at the end!

15.4  1 Robin  2 ran  3 swim  4 son warned  5 sinking
16.1

```
c s h o p  r
o s o n g o
l r s w s  c
h a o n a t
k w o n r
w o d w t w
n o s k l h
j o k e l
h c o a t l
```
17.2 Arthur had a brother  
And he didn’t want another.  
And of the brothers, neither  
Wanted sisters either.  
The last thing on this earth  
They wanted was a birth.  
So Arthur’s mother Heather  
Got them both together,  
And told them all good brothers  
Should learn to share their mothers.

17.3  
1 bath  
2 through  

17.4  
1 use  
2 taught  

18.1  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/ʌ/</th>
<th>/uː/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>studied</td>
<td>London</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18.2  
1 month, June  
2 son, brother  

18.3  
1 book  
2 rude  

18.4  
1 cat  
2 calm  

19.1  
1 quarter /ˈɔːtər/  
2 thirty /ˈθɜːti/  
3 fourth /ˈfɔːθ/  
4 first /ˈfɜːst/  
5 fourteen /ˈfɔːrˌtiːn/  

19.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words with /ʌː/</th>
<th>Words with /ɔː/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bird</td>
<td>turn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Key

19.3 1 A 3 B 5 A 7 A 9 B
2 B 4 A 6 B 8 B

19.4 1 far 3 walk 5 pot 7 her
2 worst 4 shut 6 beard 8 walked

20.1 1 boys /ɔɪ/, bows /əʊ/ 4 point /ɔɪ/ 7 hour /əʊ/
2 noise /ɔɪ/ 5 how /əʊ/ 8 flower /əʊ/
3 found /əʊ/ 6 boil /ɔɪ/ 9 enjoy /ʊɪ/

20.2 /ɔɪ/ (4 words) /əʊ/ (6 words)
enjoy noisy points choice
down town loud shout out around

20.3

20.4 1 toy 2 Good boy 3 found 4 tone

21.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 syllable</th>
<th>2 syllables</th>
<th>3 syllables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aunt</td>
<td>doctor</td>
<td>grandfather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>sister</td>
<td>officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dad</td>
<td>teacher</td>
<td>passenger</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.2 1 bought CVC 6 laugh CVC
2 eyes VC 7 two CV
3 key CV 8 youth CVC
4 day CV 9 weigh CV
5 through CCV 10 rhyme CVC

21.3 1 /dɛt/ = day 4 /tɪt/ = tea
2 /nəʊ/ = no 5 /meɪ/ = may
3 /pɛt/ = pay 6 /sɛi/ = say

English Pronunciation in Use
21.4 The correct number of syllables is:

interesting Ooo 3 syllables
restaurant Oo 2 syllables
Wednesday Oo 2 syllables
different Oo 2 syllables
vegetables Ooo 3 syllables
chocolate Oo 2 syllables
general Oo 2 syllables
lovely Oo 2 syllables

Note that in some words you can almost hear the missing syllable.

21.5 1 Walt-er walked to-wards the wait-er. = 8 syllables
2 Bett-y bought a bett-er bit of butt-er. = 10 syllables
3 The fat cat sat on the vet’s wet hat. = 9 syllables

22.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oo</th>
<th>oO</th>
<th>Ooo</th>
<th>oOo</th>
<th>ooO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>today</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>seventeen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>July</td>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>thirtieth</td>
<td>October</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>thirteenth</td>
<td>seventy</td>
<td>November</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>second</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirty</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22.2 1 Saturday 3 afternoon 5 July 7 tomorrow
2 seventy 4 eleventh 6 seventeen 8 holiday

22.3

START

eightie-th twentieth thirty-th Septem-ber
twenty-one thousand yester-day Octo-ber
November six-thi-th seventy eleventh
second fortieth thirteen seventeen
c-vacation holiday tomorrow after-noon
December Sat-ur-day ninetieth fiftieth

FINISH

22.4 1 17 3 50 5 30
2 14th 4 1916 6 80

23.1 1 oOo tomato Close the door. He told me. I like it.
2 ooO afternoon Does he drive? Were you cold? What happened?
3 oOo December It’s open. They arrived. They listened.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>OooO</th>
<th>o00O</th>
<th>OoO</th>
<th>Oo0o</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23.2</td>
<td>What do you want?</td>
<td>The bus was late.</td>
<td>Come and look.</td>
<td>Close the window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Give me a call.</td>
<td>The water's cold.</td>
<td>Where's the ear?</td>
<td>Nice to see you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What did she say?</td>
<td>It's cold and wet.</td>
<td>What's the time?</td>
<td>Phone and tell me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.3 Can't Pete drive?
 Doesn't Oscar listen?
 Can't you make Jennifer talk to you?

23.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 B</th>
<th>2 B</th>
<th>3 A</th>
<th>4 B</th>
<th>5 A</th>
<th>6 A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

24.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 lie</td>
<td>2 lock</td>
<td>3 rain</td>
<td>4 key</td>
<td>5 lime</td>
<td>6 late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 fly</td>
<td>3 clock</td>
<td>4 train</td>
<td>5 ski</td>
<td>6 plate</td>
<td>7 route</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 back</td>
<td>2 fight</td>
<td>3 fat</td>
<td>4 go</td>
<td>5 pain</td>
<td>6 pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 black</td>
<td>3 flight / fright</td>
<td>4 flat</td>
<td>5 glow / grow</td>
<td>6 plain / plane</td>
<td>7 play / pray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pay</td>
<td>4 true</td>
<td>5 stay / slay</td>
<td>6 skin / spin</td>
<td>7 spend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 glass</td>
<td>2 play</td>
<td>3 fright</td>
<td>4 tooth</td>
<td>5 stream</td>
<td>6 stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 fright</td>
<td>3 plane</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 stay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 B</th>
<th>2 A</th>
<th>3 A</th>
<th>4 B</th>
<th>5 A</th>
<th>6 B</th>
<th>7 B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 B</td>
<td>2 A</td>
<td>3 A</td>
<td>4 B</td>
<td>5 A</td>
<td>6 B</td>
<td>7 B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 field</th>
<th>2 change</th>
<th>3 six</th>
<th>4 build</th>
<th>5 shelf</th>
<th>6 wealth</th>
<th>7 guest</th>
<th>8 wild</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>field / feel / feed</td>
<td>change</td>
<td>sick</td>
<td>build</td>
<td>shelf</td>
<td>wealth</td>
<td>guest</td>
<td>wild</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25.2

A: OK, first question. What's the eighth month in the year?
B: It's August.
A: Correct! Second question. What's the highest mountain on Earth?
B: Mount Everest.
A: Correct again! Mount Everest! Next question: Which city is furthest east in Europe: Athens, Brussels or Budapest?
B: Is it Budapest, or perhaps Brussels?
A: No, it isn't. It's Athens. OK, last question. What's the biggest land animal in the world?
B: The elephant.
A: Very good! Three out of four correct, that's seventy-five percent!
25.3 1 I think old cars are better.
   2 The bank ought to be open by now.
   3 I think all the time.
   4 These big cars hold eight people.
   5 Did he film other kinds of movies too?
   6 Three people have six eyes.
   7 If you took aspirins, your head wouldn't ache.

25.4 1 cook 3 didn’t 5 guess 7 pasta
      2 helper 4 learnt 6 burnt 8 mix

26.1 1 b 3 g 5 d 7 f
      2 c 4 a 6 e

26.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 syllable</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>sings</th>
<th>goes</th>
<th>gets</th>
<th>comes</th>
<th>sees</th>
<th>pulls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 syllables</td>
<td>Oo</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>dances</td>
<td>kisses</td>
<td>washes</td>
<td>closes</td>
<td>pushes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.3 1 Hands up!
   2 There are many different kinds of whale.
   3 My favourite subject's chemistry.
   4 The wind's very strong today.

26.4 1 bird 3 arms 5 car 7 bag 9 class
      2 guests 4 song 6 books 8 shop 10 boxes

27.1 1 h 3 g 5 i 7 j 9 b
      2 e 4 c 6 a 8 f 10 d

27.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 syllable</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>walked</th>
<th>washed</th>
<th>helped</th>
<th>phoned</th>
<th>danced</th>
<th>asked</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ed = extra syllable</td>
<td>Oo</td>
<td>hated</td>
<td>needed</td>
<td>waited</td>
<td>wasted</td>
<td>tasted</td>
<td>ended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0 0 0</th>
<th>OoOoOoOo (-ed = extra syllable)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ken cooked lunch.</td>
<td>Karen counted money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fred phoned friends.</td>
<td>Stella started singing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marge mixed drinks.</td>
<td>Alice added sugar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will watched films.</td>
<td>Sheila shouted loudly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.4 1 walked 3 laugh 5 hated 7 needed
      2 want 4 danced 6 help 8 paint
28.1 1 How did you react when you saw the actor coming in?
2 The writer decided to rewrite the whole book.
3 The painter tried to repaint this part of the picture.
4 We asked the printer to reprint the whole document.
5 The viewer will be able to review this programme tomorrow.
6 They had to replay the match after a player was hurt.

28.2 1 answer 4 guitar 7 shampoo
2 mistake 5 complete 8 reason
3 copy 6 promise

28.3 1 progressed = oO  progress = Oo
2 import = oO  export = Oo
3 protest = Oo  rebelled = oO
4 desert = Oo  contrast = Oo
5 produce = oO  objects = Oo

29.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oo</th>
<th>Ooo</th>
<th>Ooooo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bookshops</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>shopping centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoe shops</td>
<td>post office</td>
<td>travel agent’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snack bars</td>
<td>hairdresser’s</td>
<td>supermarket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something</td>
<td>everything</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>playground</td>
<td>hamburger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handbag</td>
<td>sports centre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>swimming pool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>credit card</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29.2 The following should be circled.
1 second hand 4 short-sighted
2 old fashioned 5 half price
3 hand made 6 first class

29.3 1 a Yes, I have.
2 b No, I haven’t.

30.1 1 believer, believable, unbelievable, unbelieving
2 enjoyable, unenjoyable, enjoyment
3 careful, carefully, careless, carelessness, carer, caring, uncaring

30.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Oo</th>
<th>Ooo</th>
<th>Ooooo</th>
<th>Oooooo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nation, clinic, public</td>
<td>relation, romantic, discussion</td>
<td>population, scientific, pessimistic</td>
<td>communication, pronunciation, investigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>identification</td>
<td>telecommunication</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
30.3  1 introduction ooOo  7 optimistic ooOo
      2 basic Oo  8 celebration ooOo
      3 economic ooOo  9 diplomatic ooOo
      4 description oOo  10 operation ooOo
      5 romantic oOo  11 explanation ooOo
      6 competition ooOo  12 decision oOo

31.1  1 personality ooOoo  5 nationality ooOoo
      2 university ooOoo  6 reality oOoo
      3 publicity oOoo  7 humanity oOoo
      4 majority oOoo  8 electricity ooOoo

31.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>physics</th>
<th>chemistry</th>
<th>oOo</th>
<th>economy</th>
<th>sociology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>history</td>
<td>geography</td>
<td></td>
<td>geology</td>
<td>nationality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>photography</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>economics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mathematics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

31.3  My favourite subjects at school were sciences, especially chemistry and biology. I've always been good with numbers, so I was good at mathematics. I didn’t really like the social science subjects like sociology and history, and that’s strange because when I went to university I did geography.

31.4  1 civilisation  3 personality  5 author
      2 biology  4 legalisation

32.1  1 Sorry!  3 Run!  5 Don’t worry!
      2 Go straight on!
      4 Don’t move!

32.2  1 Smile!  4 Don’t look down!
      2 Look out!
      3 Go away!
      5 Sorry!

32.3  1 Don’t sleep! Stay awake!
      Get dressed! Don’t be late!
      3 Say please! Don’t be rude!
      Sit down! Eat your food!
      2 Stand still! Stay there!
      Don’t move! Take care!

33.1  1 OoO  2 OooO  3 OO  4 OooO  5 OoO

33.2  1 it  3 are  5 of  7 some
      2 a  4 can  6 or  8 my

33.3  1 Eat some cheese. 1  5 Go to the shops. 2
      2 That was the man. 2  6 Go home. 0
      3 What was his name? 2  7 Turn to the right. 2
      4 What for? 0
33.4 1
Drink milk.
Drink some milk. / Drink the milk.
Drink it with milk.
Drink some of the milk. / Drink it with the milk. / Drink it with some milk.

2
Turn right.
Turn it right.
Turn to the right.
Turn it to the right.

34.1 Possible answers:
1 He read the book. / I read my book.
2 We sang a song. / You sang that song.
3 They drank some milk. / It drank the milk.
4 We ate our lunch. / She ate some lunch.

34.2 1 Can you give it to them please?
2 Did you meet their daughter, Catherine?
3 I don't think he likes her.
4 What did she say to them?
5 Where did she buy her guitar?
6 What's his mother's name?
7 Where are your parents from?
8 We bought presents for our children.

34.3 1 He's buying presents for them.
2 They're opening their presents.
3 They'll thank him for the presents.
4 He'll thank her for the money.

34.4 1 We've done it
2 I'll ask him
3 I'll see you
4 He's gone to
5 I'll tell her

35.1 There are a lot of books in the picture. Some of them are on the desks and some are on the shelves. There are some trees outside the windows. The windows are open. There are some pens on one of the desks.

35.2 1 a 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 b 6 b 7 a

35.3 1 are 2 was 3 was 4 were 5 are 6 are 7 was 8 is 9 are 10 were

35.4 1 are 2 were 3 is 4 are 5 was 6 was 7 was 8 are 9 was 10 are

36.1 1 Where do they live?
2 What did she say?
3 Where will they work?
4 What did you see?
5 Where have they gone?
6 Who did we meet?
7 Where will he sit?
8 When will it end?
9 Where have you been?
10 Who has she asked?
36.2  1 Where do you live? OooO
  2 Where do you work? OooO
  3 Are you married? ooOo
  4 What does he teach? OooO

36.3  1 Who have / Who’ve you told?
  2 What did he say?
  3 When do you start?

37.1  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>oOoO</th>
<th>oOoOo</th>
<th>oOooO</th>
<th>oOooo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a bowl of soup</td>
<td>a pot of tea</td>
<td>a jar of honey</td>
<td>a bag of apples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bottle of wine</td>
<td>a carton of milk</td>
<td>a packet of biscuits</td>
<td>a kilo of carrots</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

37.2  1 and  2 an  3 for  4 of  5 and  6 to  7 a  8 some  9 for  10 of

37.3  1 it's time for lunch
  2 some egg and chips
  3 the bag of nuts
  4 to drink and eat
  5 to cook some rice

37.4  1 We had a nice cup of tea.
  2 I don’t want to go out tonight.
  3 I need a drink of water.
  4 We cooked a chicken.

38.1  1 felt able
  2 no new
  3 cooks take
  4 see new
  5 faced old

38.2  1 Known uses good news, as they say. No news is
  2 Have you phoned your parents this week? phoned your
  3 I've never been your here before. heard you lie
  4 I think I felt rain; let's go inside. felt rain
  5 These ships took cars across the river. ships take
  6 They joined us for dinner. joined us
  7 We stopped choosing the typewriter when we got the computer. stopped using

38.3  There was an old man called Greg,
Who tried to break open an egg.
He kicked it around,
But fell on the ground,
And found that he'd broken a leg.
39.1 1 TOM /tɒm/  
 2 BEN /ben/  
 3 ERIN /ərin/  
 4 TANIA /tənіə/  
 5 ROSIE /rəʊzi/  

39.2 1 blue_ /blu:/ and grey  
 2 me_ and you  
 3 why_ or where  
 4 her_, or you  
 5 away_ or here  

39.3 1 Are you into golf? winter  
 2 He has hair over the ears. years  
 3 It’s starting to ache. wake  
 4 I’m not sure I’d agree with you. ride  
 5 She has a shower each morning. reach  
 6 It’s quarter to eight already. wait  
 7 Do I owe you anything? why  
 8 Her eyes are a strange colour. rise  
 9 You should know better at your age! rage  

40.1 1 a sum  
   b sung  
 2 a beach  
   b beak  
 3 a coke  
   b coach  
 4 a cheek  
   b cheap  

40.2 1 (arc) art  
 2 (tribe) tried  
 3 (ache) eight  
 4 (wing) win  
 5 (lime) line  
 6 (bag) bad  

40.3 1 I got this cup by winning the game.  
 2 I’ll have to warm my hands.  
 3 Her heart broke when be left her.  
 4 It’s the last term before the holidays.  

41.1 1 moose news  
 2 are heart  
 3 are then  
 4 are thank  
 5 robin robbing  
 6 look luck  
 7 old hold  

41.2 1 A: Can I help you?  
   B: Yes, I’d like to see ... I’m sorry, how do you pronounce this name?  
   B: Yes, I’d like to see Doctor O’Shaughnessy, please.  

2  
   A: My name’s Mark.  
   B: Sorry, Mike, you say?  
   A: No, Mark, M-A-R-K.  
   B: Oh, I see. You don’t pronounce the R?  
   A: No, not in my accent.  

3  
   A: My surname’s Vaughn.  
   B: Sorry, could you repeat that, please?  
   A: Vaughn.  
   B: Vaughn? How do you spell that?  
   A: V-A-U-G-N.  
   B: Oh yes, I’ve seen that name before!
3 Sorry, could you repeat that, please?
2 Sorry, I don't understand.
1 How do you pronounce that?
4 Can you speak more slowly, please?

42.2 1 There was nothing inside / It was empty.
2 We walked carefully downstairs / It was dark.
3 I watched him / Silently he opened the drawer.
4 The rain didn't stop the next day / It just carried on.
5 The weather was hot / At the weekend it was 40 degrees.
6 I saw her clearly / She was hungry.
7 It was cold / Last night the roads were icy.

42.3 Name: Martin Britton
Address: Flat 6
98 Carlowe Road
Middleton
Postcode: DG16 H39
Telephone: 691 2281
email: mbrit@jetcom.uk

43.1 1 a It was a small car / with a red stripe along the side.
       b It was a small car with a red stripe along the side.
2 a Do you want chicken and chips / or fish and salad?
       b Do you want chicken / and chips or fish and salad?
3 a Derek can wear the most / expensive suit but he never looks smart.
       b Derek can wear the most expensive suit / but he never looks smart.

43.2 1 Take your boots and ski suit / and a dress and some nice shoes for the evenings.
2 Take a hat and sunglasses and T-shirts / and an umbrella in case it rains.
3 Take a smart suit and a shirt and tie / and some casual clothes for the weekend.
4 Take your camera and some good walking shoes / and a towel and bathing costume for the beach.

43.3 A man wanted to buy his wife a new dress / because it was her birthday / so he went to a department store / and looked around / and he was looking for about an hour / but he couldn't decide / and finally this shop assistant came / and asked if he needed help / he said he was looking for a dress / and the shop assistant asked / is it for you sir?

44.1 1 B is looking in a business appointments book.
2 B is doing a mental calculation.
3 B is checking in a personal diary.
4 B is looking in a wallet.
44.2 1 I don’t really have much time to ehm ::: to listen to music •
2 Yeah, I love Brazilian music, people like Gal Costa •••
3 She plays quite a lot of instruments, piano, guitar •••
4 Dad’s really into classical music, you know, specially Mozart •
5 I started the piano when I was, let’s see, ehm ::: fifteen •

44.3 I didn’t go to the concert because I lost my ticket. Well no, I didn’t actually lose it, it was in my jeans pocket, you see, and I put it in the washing machine. So anyway, I went to the door of the theatre and they said it was no good.

45.1 1 Her computer fell on the floor and she lost all her data.
2 He asked for a glass of water with lemon and ice.
3 She’s got a place at university.

45.2 1 Well 2 anyway 3 Well 4 anyway

46.1 It’s really cold in Montana sometimes. Your beard and moustache get full of ice and you feel the air freeze, in your nose and mouth.

46.2 Debbie you know
   Kimberly kind of
   Greg like

46.3 We don’t like have coffee breaks, I mean we just like get a coffee or tea and sort of like take it back to our desks, you know, but it’s kind of dangerous ‘cause, I mean, people sometimes like knock the drink over the computer, you know.

46.4 1 I don’t think these are the men, you know.
2 I’ve taught you everything you know.
3 Do you know the place I mean? It’s just over there.
4 She’s not the one. I mean, she’s too tall.
5 They’re like wild animals.
6 This is, like, Arctic weather.

47.1
47.2 1 Take a piece of paper and a pen. 4 Draw a triangle on top of the square.
2 Draw a line across the page. 5 Draw some windows and a door.
3 On top of that line, draw a square. 6 Draw a tree to the left of the house.

47.3 1 Check that everything looks right and then send it.
2 Click here so you get a new page. OK, and now write the title at the top.
3 Make sure you save that OK and now close the program.
4 You will see the icon on the right of your screen.
5 Open the program, right and now start a new document.
6 I think it’s ready now you can switch it on

48.1 1 a What she said was good.  1
     b What she said was ‘Good!’  2

2 a He said, ‘Linda was married.’  2
     b He said Linda was married.  1

3 a That’s the thing she said.  2
     b ‘That’s the thing,’ she said.  1

4 a He wrote a letter to the president.  1
     b He wrote ‘A letter to the president’.  2

5 a I don’t know what I thought.  2
     b ‘I don’t know what,’ I thought.  1

6 a She says, ‘What she thinks is right.’  1
     b She says what she thinks is right.  2

7 a ‘Who?’ wrote Julius Caesar.  2
     b Who wrote Julius Caesar?  1

8 a Who said ‘Martin’?  1
     b ‘Who?’ said Martin.  2

48.2 So I say to Claire ‘Where’s David, Claire?’ and she says ‘Oh, he’s staying at home
to do his homework,’ and of course I thought, ‘Oh no he’s not!’ Because I saw him,
you see, going into the café with Lorraine and I said, ‘Hi David!’ and he went
completely red, and Lorraine said, ‘We’re doing a school project together,’ and
I thought, ‘Oh yes, I know what kind of project that is!’

49.1 1

A: I finished first.  B: No, I finished first!
B: No, you didn’t finish first!
B: No, you finished last!

2

B: No, you’re stupid!
A: You’re stupid!  B: I’m not stupid!
B: No, I’m clever!
49.2
A: I won’t pass.
B: You will pass.
A: You’ll pass.
B: I don’t know.
A: You won’t fail.
B: I might fail.
A: I will fail.
B: The exam’s not hard.
A: It’s very hard.
B: But not too hard.
A: Too hard for me.
B: But you’re very clever!
A: You’re the clever one.
B: Yes, I suppose you’re right.

50.1
1 It’s cold … very cold.
2 It’s a bag … a plastic bag.
3 My name’s Bond … James Bond.
4 It’s in Asia … central Asia.
5 He’s a composer … a French composer.

50.2
A: It’s very quiet.
B: Too quiet.
A: I think something’s wrong.
B: Very wrong.
A: I don’t like it.
B: I don’t like it at all.
A: Let’s get out of here.
B: Let’s get out fast!

50.3
1 a Near Milan, yes.
2 a I’m a graphic designer.
3 a Yes, a very nice flat.
4 a Well, I’m learning French.
5 a Yes, I lived there for a year.
6 a Yes, two brothers.
7 a I like jazz and classical.
1 b Near Milan, yes.
2 b I’m a graphic designer.
3 b Yes, a very nice flat.
4 b Well, I’m learning French.
5 b Yes, I lived there for a year.
6 b Yes, two brothers.
7 b I like jazz and classical.

51.1
1 A: A black coffee please.
   B: Sorry, do you want milk with your coffee?
   A: No, a black coffee, please.
2 A: What’s your nationality?
   B: Well, my wife’s an American citizen.
   A: Yes, but what’s your nationality, sir?
3 A: What time is it?
   B: Well, the clocks changed last night …
   A: So what time is it then?
51.2 1 a–1, b–2  2 a–1, b–2  3 a–2, b–1  4 a–1, b 2

52.1 1 A: I’d like a salad please.
   B: A mixed salad or a Greek salad?
   A: What’s the difference?
   B: Well, a mixed salad has tuna and a Greek salad has cheese.

2 A: I’d like to stay two nights please.
   B: Do you want full board or half board?
   A: What’s the difference?
   B: Full board includes all meals and half board includes just breakfast and dinner.

3 A: We’d like a room for two please.
   B: Would you like standard or deluxe?
   A: What’s the difference?
   B: Standard has a mountain view and deluxe has a sea view.

52.2 1 a–2, b–1  2 a–2, b–1

52.3 1 b–a  2 a–b  3 b–a

53.1 1 b  2 b  3 b  4 a

53.2 1 A: No, the bathroom!
   2 A: No, he’s retired!
   3 A: No, a bookshelf.
   4 A: No, I said impossible!
   5 A: No, downstairs!

54.A If a person who has a bad quality accuses you of having that same bad quality, you can reply ‘Look who’s talking!’

If somebody tell you their plan, and the plan is very unlikely to succeed, you can reply “You’ll be lucky!”

54.1 1 ☐  2 ☐  3 ☐  4 ☐

The meaning of the expressions in this exercise is:

You must be joking. – If someone makes a suggestion and you think it is a very bad idea, you can say this.

Chance would be a fine thing. – If someone is telling you about something you would like to do if you had the opportunity, you can say this.

Go for it! – When someone is about to start a performance, you can encourage them by saying this.

Give me a break. – If you achieve something in difficult circumstances and someone nevertheless complains about it, you can say this.

54.2 1 a – Who?  3 a – Yes?
   b – Who?  4 a – When?
   2 a – What?  b – Yes.
   b – What!
55.1 1
A: When?
B: Tomorrow.
A: When? ✓
B: Tomorrow.
A: Tomorrow? ✓
B: Yes, tomorrow.

55.2

55.3 1 Right at the lights ( ? )
2 Next to the supermarket ( ? )
3 It's this one ( . )
4 It's opposite the school ( ? )
5 It's a long way ( . )
6 Under the bridge ( . )
7 Take the next left ( ? )

56.1 1 Have you been to America? ※
2 What do you study? ※
3 What time is it? ※
4 Are you over eighteen? ※
5 Can you drive? ※
6 Where's he going? ※
7 Do you like it? ※

56.2 1 Where in Cuba?
2 And what's your name?
3 Where do you live?
4 What do you study?
5 When will you finish?
56.3 1 a Do you have any children?
   b Do you have any children?
2 a What's your first language?
   b What's your first language?
3 a What do you do on Sundays?
   b What do you do on Sundays?
4 a ... why did he do it?
   b ... why did he do it?
5 a ... where are my glasses?
   b ... where are my glasses?

57.1 1 2 3 4

57.2 1a 1b
2a 2b
3a 3b
4a 4b
5a 5b
6a 6b
7a 7b

58.1 1 Yes 2 Oh 3 Oh 4 Yes 5 Yes 6 Oh

58.2 A: Do you remember Colin?
You: Yes / Uh huh / Mmm.
A: And you know his sister Linda?
You: Yes / Uh huh / Mmm.
A: Well, you know she's an actress?
You: Yes / Uh huh / Mmm.
A: And you know she's worked in a few movies?
You: Yes / Uh huh / Mmm.
A: And you know she was making another movie in Australia?
You: Yes / Uh huh / Mmm.
A: Well, a spider bit her and she's very sick!
You: Oh, that's terrible!
A: Yeah, it's terrible, isn't it!

58.3 1 Oh, really! 2 Oh, really. 3 Oh, really! 4 Oh, really.

59.1 1 It's nice.
2 We're quite good.
3 Yes, it is, but...
4 I don't know.
5 Yes.

59.2 1 disagreeing 2 disagreeing 3 agreeing

6 He does, but...
7 She likes you.
8 They're friendly, but...
9 Not bad.
59.3  1 How’s your headache? It isn’t getting worse, is it? ■ ■
2 Those flowers are lovely, aren’t they? ■ ■
3 You haven’t seen my glasses anywhere, have you? ■ ■
4 Torsen’s a great player, isn’t he? ■ ■
5 I’m not sure. He was from Brazil, wasn’t he? ■ ■
6 I can’t quite remember. You need 40 points to win, don’t you? ■ ■
7 Tennis is so boring, isn’t it? ■ ■
8 She isn’t a very good swimmer, is she? ■ ■
9 I’m not sure. It starts at nine, doesn’t it? ■ ■
10 It wasn’t a very interesting game, was it? ■ ■

60.1  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>people they like</th>
<th>people they don’t like</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anne</td>
<td>Jeremy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kathleen</td>
<td>Gail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60.2  Possible answers

A: The beach was quite nice.  
You: Nice? It was absolutely fantastic!  
A: The weather was good.  
You: Good? It was brilliant!  
A: The nightlife was OK.  
You: OK? It was amazing!

A: The shops were nice.  
You: Nice? They were brilliant!  
A: The people were OK.  
You: OK? They were absolutely fantastic!  
A: The flight was good.  
You: Good? It was brilliant!

60.3  

1 a Brilliant! →
   b Brilliant!
2 a Well done! ←
   b Well done! →
3 a Amazing! →
   b Amazing!
4 a Delicious! ←
   b Delicious!
5 a Excellent! ←
   b Excellent!
Section D  Reference

The phonemic alphabet

D1.1 1 For writing: pencil paper pen notebook
2 In the office: desk fax computer telephone
3 Body parts: neck head hand leg
4 Farm animals: hen pig sheep cow
5 Colours: green blue red black
6 Verbs: get take give go
7 Numbers: seven ten three five

D1.2

D1.3 1 Long vowel crossword

English Pronunciation in Use
2 Short vowel crossword

3 Vowels before R crossword

D1.4 1 jumping
2 washing
3 using
4 bathing
5 singing
6 thinking
7 playing
### D1.5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IC</th>
<th>IC</th>
<th>IC</th>
<th>IC</th>
<th>IC</th>
<th>IC</th>
<th>IC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>why</td>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>fear</td>
<td>fair</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>door</td>
<td>deer</td>
<td>dare</td>
<td>die</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>pour</td>
<td>pier</td>
<td>pair</td>
<td>pie</td>
<td>pea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>toy</td>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tie</td>
<td>tea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>boy</td>
<td>bore</td>
<td>beer</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>here</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>share</td>
<td>shy</td>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D1.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>h</th>
<th>æ</th>
<th>m</th>
<th>b</th>
<th>ʒ</th>
<th>q</th>
<th>ə</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ɪ</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>ɪ:t</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>æ</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>ʌ</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ʒ</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>d3</td>
<td>z</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- hamburger
- bread
- chips
- meat
- carrot
- onion
- tomato
- banana
- pasta
- rice
- fish
- orange
- strawberries
-护士
- cook
- guard

### D1.7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>k</th>
<th>d</th>
<th>t</th>
<th>n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>ə</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>ə</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a:</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>ɪ</td>
<td>ə</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ə</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>ə</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- doctor
- engineer
- cook
- guard
- driver
- writer
- painter
- mechanic
- singer
- nurse
- farmer
- waiter
- vet
D2 Pronunciation test

Section A Letters and sounds

A1  1 want    3 soup    5 blood    7 bread
     2 care    4 most    6 rude

A2  1 lamb    3 listen   5 half     7 here
     2 receipt 4 hour    6 calm

A3  1 came    4 rose/rows 7 hi/high
     2 cake    5 wait/weight 8 bear/bare
     3 late    6 size/sighs 9 burn

A4  1 pen    5 coat    9 vet
     2 cut    6 fair    10 price
     3 feel   7 women   11 suit
     4 west   8 office's 12 code

     13 wine   17 singing
     14 back   18 collect
     15 hair
     16 wash

Section B Syllables, words and sentences

B1  1 glass    4 need    7 is
     2 truth    5 wanted  8 were
     3 smell    6 thirteen 9 and

     10 does   13 pasta
     11 That's a mile 14 guests
     12 support

B2  1 washes  3 afternoon 5 fortieth 7 supermarket
     2 wanted  4 asked   6 builds  8 over

B3  1 tomorrow 4 Don't worry!
     2 fifteen  5 today
     3 Close the door. 6 famous

     7 first class
     8 economy
     9 No, it isn't.

B4  1 S    3 D    5 D
     2 S    4 S    6 S

     7 D   9 S
     8 D  10 S

Section C Conversation

C1  1 a    3 a    5 b
     2 b    4 a    6 b

C2  1 b    3 a    5 a
     2 b    4 a    6 b

C3  1 is    3 is    5 isn't
     2 isn't 4 does   6 isn't

     7 isn't
     8 is
     9 is
     10 is
D4 Sound pairs

Sound pair 1

1 S 2 S 3 D
8 bad 9 dead 10 sat 11 merry 12 men

Sound pair 2

1 S 2 S 3 D
8 fun 9 cap 10 rang 11 cut 12 He’s sung

Sound pair 3

1 S 2 D 3 S
8 cat 9 match 10 harder 11 parks 12 hat

Sound pair 4

1 D 2 S 3 S
8 gate 9 pepper 10 west 11 fail 12 pain

Sound pair 5

1 S 2 D 3 D
8 their 9 stairs 10 hey 11 a pear 12 nowhere

Sound pair 6

1 S 2 D 3 S
8 far 9 bare 10 cars 11 fair 12 stars

Sound pair 7

1 D 2 S 3 D
8 form 9 park 10 stores 11 part 12 four

Sound pair 8

1 S 2 D 3 S
8 where 9 dare 10 cheers 11 hear 12 air

Sound pair 9

1 S 2 D 3 S
8 heart 9 much 10 dark 11 cart 12 come

Sound pair 10

1 S 2 D 3 D
8 cheap 9 fit 10 live 11 feel 12 to sit

Sound pair 11

1 D 2 S 3 S
8 we’re 9 knee 10 pier 11 feed 12 here
Sound pair 12
1 S 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 S
8 turn 9 learned 10 Jenny 11 bird 12 west

Sound pair 13
1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 D 7 S
8 mess 9 bill 10 will 11 letter 12 left

Sound pair 14
1 S 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D 7 D
8 note 9 rob 10 goat 11 won’t 12 cost

Sound pair 15
1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 S
8 not 9 luck 10 shut 11 collar 12 they’re gone

Sound pair 16
1 S 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D 7 D
8 soup 9 rule 10 boot 11 pole 12 grow

Sound pair 17
1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 D
8 saw 9 low 10 call 11 bowl 12 walk

Sound pair 18
1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 S
8 know 9 blouse 10 allowed 11 a shower 12 phoned

Sound pair 19
1 S 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D
8 Luke 9 fool 10 pool 11 shoe dye 12 butcher saw

Sound pair 20
1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 books 6 luck

Sound pair 21
1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 D 7 D
8 but 9 hurt 10 earned a 11 suffer 12 shut

Sound pair 22
1 S 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D
8 bet 9 steady 10 won 11 again 12 butter
### Sound pair 23

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>odder</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>spot</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>water ski</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>port</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 24

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>beard</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>we're</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>fur</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>bird</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 25

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>stir</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>bared</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>fur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 26

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>bored</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>sir</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>walked</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 27

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>far</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>heart</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>further</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>firm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 28

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>bill</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>push</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>packs</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>robe</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>bear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 29

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>vet</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>They’ve ached</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>some of each</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Say ‘boil’</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>I’ve rushed it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 30

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>fool</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>pine</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>past</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>a nicer pear</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>face</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 31

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>eyes</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>sip</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>raise</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>niece</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>peace</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pair 32

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>sign</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>mash</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>save</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>seat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sound pairs 33

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>thing</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>breeze</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>closed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sound pair 34
1 S  2 S  3 D  4 D  5 D  6 S  7 D
8 said  9 town  10 coat  11 wide  12 writing

Sound pairs 35
1 S  2 D  3 D  4 S  5 D  6 D  7 D
8 tree  9 they  10 thanks  11 taught  12 breathe

Sound pairs 36
1 S  2 S  3 D  4 D  5 D  6 S  7 D
8 torch  9 aid  10 beat  11 coach  12 hedge

Sound pair 37
1 D  2 S  3 D  4 S  5 D  6 D  7 S
8 that's over  9 lived  10 few  11 wife's  12 of air

Sound pair 38
1 D  2 D  3 S  4 D  5 S  6 S  7 D
8 made aware  9 verse  10 wine  11 vest  12 half a weight

Sound pairs 39
1 D  2 D  3 D  4 S  5 D  6 S  7 S
8 thirst  9 free  10 thought  11 What some of us  12 either

Sound pair 40
1 S  2 D  3 S  4 D  5 D  6 D  7 D
8 gap's  9 back  10 ghost  11 card  12 gold

Sound pair 41
1 S  2 S  3 D  4 D  5 S  6 D  7 S
8 eight  9 heart  10 hair  11 earring  12 heating

Sound pair 42
1 D  2 D  3 S  4 D  5 S  6 S  7 D
8 jet  9 until July  10 yoke  11 yours  12 juice

Sound pairs 43
1 S  2 D  3 S  4 D  5 D  6 S  7 S
8 holder's  9 fold  10 sheet  11 hair  12 fired

Sound pair 44
1 D  2 S  3 S  4 D  5 S  6 D  7 S
8 shoes  9 chair  10 cash  11 chips  12 watch
Sound pair 45
1 D 2 D 3 S
8 Joe's cheap
4 S 5 S 6 S
10 riches 11 H
12 tune

Sound pairs 46
1 D 2 S 3 S
8 arch aids
4 D 5 S 6 D
10 each 11 Watch
12 rage

Sound pairs 47
1 S 2 S 3 D
8 chips drunk
4 S 5 D 6 D
10 train trees
12 jaw

Sound pair 48
1 D 2 S 3 D
8 hanged win
4 S 5 S 6 S
10 robbing banks ran
12 sinking

Sound pairs 49
1 S 2 S 3 D
8 turn mice
4 D 5 D 6 D
10 son warned mine
12 swing

Sound pair 50
1 D 2 S 3 S
8 prayed wrong
4 D 5 S 6 S
10 glow fries
12 collect
I would like to thank the following reviewers in different parts of the world who helped with feedback and piloting during the development of this project:
Zaina Aparecida Abdalla Nunes, São Paulo, Brazil
Tim Bromley, Bath, UK
Elise Brun, Òrsay, France
Katie Head, Cambridge, UK
Martin Hewings, Birmingham, UK
Kathy Keohane, Stockport, UK
Magdalena Kijak, Krakow, Poland
Jennifer Jenkins, London, UK
Elizabeth de Lange, Beckum, Germany
David Marson, Colchester, UK
Matthew Norbury, Edinburgh, UK
Andrea Paul, Melbourne, Australia
David Perry, Valencia, Spain
Tony Robinson, Cambridge, UK
Sylvie Rolfe, Sydney, Australia
Diane Slauuti, Manchester, UK
Rastislav Sustarsic, Lubljana, Slovenia
Robin Walker, Oviedo, Spain
Max Walsh, Colchester, UK

I would like to thank Noirin Burke for her faith. Many thanks too to Alyson Maskell and Frances Amrani for their editorial care and initiative.

I also owe special thanks to the excellent IATEFL publication “Speak Out”*, many of whose contributors may recognise their influence in one part or another of this book.

*The newsletter of the pronunciation special interest group.

Mark Hancock 2003

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

Illustrations by Martin Aston, Kathy Baxendale, Jo Blake, Nick Duffy, Tony Forbes, Phil Healey and David Shenton.

Cover design by Dunne and Scully

Designed and typeset by Kamae Design, Oxford.